

Operating manual IRC5 with FlexPendant



Trace back information:
Workspace R17-1 version a5
Checked in 2017-03-21
Skribenta version 5.1.011

Operating manual IRC5 with FlexPendant

RobotWare 6.05

Document ID: 3HAC050941-001

Revision: D

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by ABB. ABB assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this manual.

Except as may be expressly stated anywhere in this manual, nothing herein shall be construed as any kind of guarantee or warranty by ABB for losses, damages to persons or property, fitness for a specific purpose or the like.

In no event shall ABB be liable for incidental or consequential damages arising from use of this manual and products described herein.

This manual and parts thereof must not be reproduced or copied without ABB's written permission.

Keep for future reference.

Additional copies of this manual may be obtained from ABB.

Original instructions.

© Copyright 2017 ABB. All rights reserved.

ABB AB, Robotics

Robotics and Motion

Se-721 68 Västerås

Sweden

Table of contents

| | | uct documentation, IRC5 | 12 |
|---|------------|--|----------|
| 1 | Safet | ty | 15 |
| | 1.1 | About this chapter | 15 |
| | 1.2 | Applicable standards | 16 |
| | 1.3 | Safety terminology | 18 |
| | | 1.3.1 Safety signals in the manual | 18 |
| | | 1.3.2 Protective stop and emergency stop | 20 |
| | | 1.3.3 Safe use of the jogging device | 21 |
| | 1.4 | How to deal with an emergency | 22 |
| | | 1.4.1 Stop the system | 22 |
| | | 1.4.2 Extinguishing fires | 24 |
| | | 1.4.3 Recover from emergency stops | 25 |
| | 1.5 | Working in a safe manner | 26 |
| | | 1.5.1 Overview | 26 |
| | | 1.5.2 For your own safety | 27 |
| | | 1.5.3 DANGER - Moving robots are potentially lethal! | 28 |
| | | 1.5.4 Handling of FlexPendant | 29 |
| | | 1.5.5 Safety tools | 31 |
| | | 1.5.6 Safety in manual mode | 32 |
| | | 1.5.7 Safety in automatic mode | 34 |
| | | , | |
| 2 | Welc | ome to IRC5 | 35 |
| | 2.1 | About this chapter | 35 |
| | 2.2 | What is an IRC5 controller? | 36 |
| | 2.3 | What is a FlexPendant? | 37 |
| | 2.4 | What is a T10? | 43 |
| | 2.5 | What is RobotStudio Online? | 45 |
| | 2.6 | What is RobotStudio? | 47 |
| | 2.7 | When to use different jogging devices | 48 |
| | 2.8 | Buttons and ports on the controller | 51 |
| 3 | Navi | gating and handling FlexPendant | 53 |
| | 3.1 | About this chapter | 53 |
| | 3.2 | The ABB menu | 54 |
| | 0.2 | 3.2.1 HotEdit menu | 54 |
| | | 3.2.2 FlexPendant Explorer | 56 |
| | | 3.2.3 Inputs and Outputs, I/O | 57 |
| | | 3.2.4 Jogging | 58 |
| | | 3.2.5 Production Window | 60 |
| | | 3.2.6 Program Data | 61 |
| | | 3.2.7 Program Editor | 63 |
| | | 3.2.8 Backup and Restore | 65 |
| | | 3.2.9 Calibration | 66 |
| | | 3.2.10 Control Panel | 68 |
| | | 3.2.11 Event Log | 70 |
| | | 3.2.12 System Info | 72 |
| | | 3.2.13 Restart | 74 |
| | | 3.2.14 Log Off | 75 |
| | 3.3 | Operator window | 76 |
| | | · • | 77 |
| | 3.4 3.5 | Status barQuickset | |
| | ა.၁ | 3.5.1 The Quickset menu | 78 78 |
| | | 3.5.2 Quickset menu, Mechanical unit | 79 |
| | | 3.5.2 Quickset menu, Mechanical unit | 79 84 |
| | | a a a commisser menn moremenn | ~4 |

| | | 3.5.4 | Quickset menu, Run Mode | 85 |
|----|---|--|--|--|
| | | 3.5.5 | Quickset menu, Step Mode | |
| | | 3.5.6 | Quickset menu, Speed | |
| | | 3.5.7 | Quickset menu, Tasks | |
| | 3.6 | | procedures | |
| | | 3.6.1 | Using the soft keyboard | |
| | | 3.6.2 | Messages on the FlexPendant | 91 |
| | | 3.6.3 | Scrolling and zooming | 92 |
| | | 3.6.4 | Filtering data | |
| | | 3.6.5 | Process applications | |
| | | 3.6.6 | Granting access for RobotStudio | |
| | | 3.6.7 | Logging on and off | 98 |
| | 3.7 | | ing FlexPendant settings | |
| | 3.7 | 3.7.1 | System settings | |
| | | 3.7.1 | 3.7.1.1 Setting default paths | |
| | | | 3.7.1.2 Defining a view to be shown during operating mode change or startup | |
| | | | | |
| | | | 3.7.1.3 Changing the background image | 102 |
| | | | 3.7.1.4 Defining visibility level for UAS protected functions | |
| | | | 3.7.1.5 Defining an additional test view | 104 |
| | | | 3.7.1.6 Defining position programming rule | 105 |
| | | | 3.7.1.7 Defining which tasks should be selectable in the tasks panel | |
| | | | 3.7.1.8 Managing the display of controller and system name | 108 |
| | | 3.7.2 | Basic settings | 109 |
| | | | 3.7.2.1 Changing brightness and contrast | |
| | | | 3.7.2.2 Adapting the FlexPendant for left-handed users | 110 |
| | | | 3.7.2.3 Changing date and time | |
| | | | 3.7.2.4 Configuring Most Common I/O | |
| | | | 3.7.2.5 Changing language | 114 |
| | | | 3.7.2.6 Changing programmable keys | |
| | | | 0.7.0.7 Colibrating the touch serson | 447 |
| | | | 3.7.2.7 Calibrating the touch screen | 117 |
| 1 | logg | ina | 5.7.2.7 Calibrating the touch screen | |
| 4 | Jogg | | | 119 |
| 4 | 4.1 | Introdu | uction to jogging | 119 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 | Introdu Coordi | uction to joggingnate systems for jogging | 119 119 121 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 | Introdu Coordi Joystic | uction to joggingnate systems for joggingk directions | 119 119 121 127 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric | nate systems for joggingk directions | 119 119 121 127 128 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi | nate systems for jogging | 119 119 121 127 128 129 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi | action to jogging | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi | uction to jogging | 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 4.6.1 4.6.2 | action to jogging | 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 4.6.1 4.6.2 | action to jogging | 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 |
| 4_ | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 4.6.1 4.6.2 | uction to jogging | 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 | Iction to jogging | 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 9 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 | action to jogging | 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 9 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 | action to jogging | 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 9 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 | uction to jogging | 119 119 121 127 128 130 130 132 133 134 135 136 137 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 | Iction to jogging Inate systems for jogging Ick directions Ictions to jogging Inated jogging Ina | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 136 137 139 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 | Iction to jogging nate systems for jogging ck directions ctions to jogging nated jogging settings for jogging Selecting mechanical unit for jogging Selecting motion mode Selecting tool, work object, and payload Setting the tool orientation Jog axis by axis Selecting coordinate system Locking the joystick in specific directions Incremental movement for precise positioning Reading the exact position | 119 119 121 127 128 130 130 132 133 134 135 137 139 141 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 | Iction to jogging nate systems for jogging ck directions ctions to jogging nated jogging settings for jogging Selecting mechanical unit for jogging Selecting motion mode Selecting tool, work object, and payload Setting the tool orientation Jog axis by axis Selecting coordinate system Locking the joystick in specific directions Incremental movement for precise positioning Reading the exact position Aligning tools | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 136 137 139 |
| 4 | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 | Iction to jogging nate systems for jogging ck directions ctions to jogging nated jogging settings for jogging Selecting mechanical unit for jogging Selecting motion mode Selecting tool, work object, and payload Setting the tool orientation Jog axis by axis Selecting coordinate system Locking the joystick in specific directions Incremental movement for precise positioning Reading the exact position | 119 119 121 127 128 130 130 132 133 134 135 137 139 141 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 9 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin | nate systems for jogging sk directions sk directions stions to jogging nated jogging settings for jogging Selecting mechanical unit for jogging Selecting motion mode Selecting tool, work object, and payload Setting the tool orientation Jog axis by axis Selecting coordinate system Locking the joystick in specific directions Incremental movement for precise positioning Reading the exact position Aligning tools g and testing | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 136 137 141 143 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 9 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin | nate systems for joggingk directionstions to joggingmated jogg | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 136 137 141 143 145 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 Progr | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 9 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin Before Using | nate systems for joggingk directionstions to joggingmated jogg | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 136 137 143 143 145 145 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin Before Using Progra | nate systems for jogging k directions ctions to jogging nated jogging settings for jogging Selecting mechanical unit for jogging Selecting motion mode Selecting tool, work object, and payload Setting the tool orientation Jog axis by axis Selecting coordinate system Locking the joystick in specific directions Incremental movement for precise positioning Reading the exact position Aligning tools g and testing you start programming RAPID programs mming concept | 119 121 127 128 129 130 132 133 134 135 136 137 141 143 145 146 148 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 Progr | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic 9 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin Before Using Progra 5.3.1 | Inction to jogging Inate systems for jogging Isk directions Inctions to jogging Inated jogging Isettings for jogging Isettings for jogging Isettings for jogging Isetting mechanical unit for jogging Isetting mechanical unit for jogging Isetting motion mode Iselecting motion mode Iselecting tool, work object, and payload Isetting the tool orientation Isetting the tool orientation Isetting the joystick in specific directions Incremental movement for precise positioning | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 132 133 134 135 136 137 141 143 145 146 148 148 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 Progr | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin Before Using Progra 5.3.1 5.3.2 | Inction to jogging Inate systems for jogging Isk directions Isk directions Isk directions Isk directions Istions to jogging Inated jogging Isettings for jogging Isettings for jogging Isetting mechanical unit for jogging Iselecting mechanical unit for jogging Iselecting motion mode Iselecting tool, work object, and payload Isetting the tool orientation Iselecting coordinate system Iselecting coordinate system Incremental movement for precise positioning Incremental mo | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 141 143 145 146 148 148 151 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 Progr | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin Before Using Progra 5.3.1 5.3.2 5.3.3 | Inction to jogging Inate systems for jogging It directions It directions It directions It is state of jogging It is settings for jogging It is selecting mechanical unit for jogging It is selecting metion mode It is selecting motion mode It is selecting tool, work object, and payload It is setting the tool orientation It is jog axis by axis It is selecting coordinate system It is selecting tools in specific directions Incremental movement for precise positioning It is selecting It is select | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 132 133 134 135 136 141 143 145 146 148 148 151 155 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 Progr | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin Before Using Progra 5.3.1 5.3.2 5.3.3 5.3.4 | Inction to jogging | 119 121 127 128 129 130 132 133 134 135 136 141 143 145 146 148 148 151 155 160 |
| | 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 Progr | Introdu Coordi Joystic Restric Coordi Basic : 4.6.1 4.6.2 4.6.3 4.6.4 4.6.5 4.6.6 4.6.7 4.6.8 4.6.9 4.6.10 rammin Before Using Progra 5.3.1 5.3.2 5.3.3 | Inction to jogging Inate systems for jogging It directions It directions It directions It is state of jogging It is settings for jogging It is selecting mechanical unit for jogging It is selecting metion mode It is selecting motion mode It is selecting tool, work object, and payload It is setting the tool orientation It is jog axis by axis It is selecting coordinate system It is selecting tools in specific directions Incremental movement for precise positioning It is selecting It is select | 119 119 121 127 128 129 130 130 132 133 134 135 136 141 143 145 146 148 151 155 160 164 |

| | 5.4 | Data ty | /pes | |
|---|------|----------------|---|-----|
| | | 5.4.1 | Viewing data in specific tasks, modules, or routines | |
| | | 5.4.2 | Creating new data instance | 167 |
| | | 5.4.3 | Editing data instances | 169 |
| | 5.5 | Tools. | | |
| | | 5.5.1 | What is a tool? | |
| | | 5.5.2 | What is the tool center point? | |
| | | 5.5.3 | Creating a tool | |
| | | 5.5.4 | Defining the tool frame | |
| | | | | |
| | | 5.5.5 | Editing the tool data | |
| | | 5.5.6 | Editing the tool declaration | 185 |
| | | 5.5.7 | Deleting a tool | |
| | _ | 5.5.8 | Setup for stationary tools | |
| | 5.6 | | bjects | 189 |
| | | 5.6.1 | What is a work object? | 189 |
| | | 5.6.2 | Creating a work object | |
| | | 5.6.3 | Defining the work object coordinate system | 191 |
| | | 5.6.4 | Editing the work object data | |
| | | 5.6.5 | Editing the work object declaration | 196 |
| | | 5.6.6 | Deleting a work object | |
| | 5.7 | | ds | |
| | 0.7 | 5.7.1 | Creating a payload | |
| | | 5.7.1 | Editing the payload data | |
| | | 5.7.3 | Editing the payload data | 200 |
| | | 5.7.3 5.7.4 | | |
| | - 0 | | Deleting a payload | |
| | 5.8 | |] | 204 |
| | | 5.8.1 | About the automatic mode | |
| | | 5.8.2 | About the manual mode | |
| | | 5.8.3 | Using the hold-to-run function | 207 |
| | | 5.8.4 | Running the program from a specific instruction | |
| | | 5.8.5 | Running a specific routine | 209 |
| | | 5.8.6 | Stepping instruction by instruction | 210 |
| | 5.9 | Service | e routines | |
| | | 5.9.1 | Running a service routine | |
| | | 5.9.2 | Battery shutdown service routine | |
| | | 5.9.3 | Calibration Pendulum, CalPendulum service routine | |
| | | 5.9.4 | Service Information System, ServiceInfo service routine | |
| | | 5.9.5 | LoadIdentify, load identification service routine | 220 |
| | | 5.9.6 | Brake check | |
| | | 5.9.0 | | |
| | | | 5.9.6.1 Description of the I/O setup | |
| | | | 5.9.6.2 Brake check signal description | |
| | | | 5.9.6.3 Configure system parameters | 235 |
| _ | D | | | 007 |
| 6 | Kunn | ing in p | production | 237 |
| | 6.1 | Basic r | procedures | 237 |
| | | 6.1.1 | Starting programs | |
| | | 6.1.2 | Stopping programs | |
| | | 6.1.3 | Using multitasking programs | |
| | | 6.1.4 | Using motion supervision and non motion execution | 241 |
| | | 6.1.5 | Using the hot plug option | |
| | 6.0 | | | |
| | 6.2 | | e shooting and error recovery | |
| | | 6.2.1 | General procedure when trouble shooting | |
| | | 6.2.2 | Returning the robot to the path | |
| | | 6.2.3 | Running RAPID program with uncalibrated mechanical unit | |
| | 6.3 | | ing modes | |
| | | 6.3.1 | Present operating mode | |
| | | 6.3.2 | Switching from manual to automatic mode | 255 |
| | | 6.3.3 | Switching from automatic to manual mode | |
| | | 6.3.4 | Switching to manual full speed mode | |
| | | | • | |

Table of contents

| | 6.4 | Modifying positions | 259 |
|-----|-------|--|-----|
| | | 6.4.1 Modifying and tuning positions | 259 |
| | | 6.4.2 Modifying positions in the Program Editor or Production Window | |
| | | 6.4.3 Tuning positions with HotEdit | |
| | | 6.4.4 Working with displacements and offsets | 268 |
| | | 6.4.5 Moving the robot to a programmed position | 270 |
| 7 | Hand | lling inputs and outputs, I/O | 271 |
| | 7.1 | Viewing signal lists | 271 |
| | 7.2 | Simulating and changing signal values | 272 |
| | 7.3 | Viewing signal group | 273 |
| | 7.4 | Safety signals | |
| | | 7.4.1 Safety I/O signals | |
| 8 | Hand | lling the event log | 277 |
| | 8.1 | Accessing the event log | 277 |
| | 8.2 | Deleting log entries | |
| | 8.3 | Saving log entries | |
| 9 | Back | up and restore | 281 |
| | 9.1 | Back up the system | 281 |
| | 9.2 | Restore the system | 283 |
| | 9.3 | Important when performing backups! | |
| 10 | Calib | rating | 289 |
| | 10.1 | How to check if the robot needs calibration | 289 |
| | 10.2 | Updating revolution counters | |
| Inc | lex | | 293 |

Overview of this manual

About this manual

This manual contains instructions for daily operation of IRC5 based robot systems using a FlexPendant.

Usage

This manual should be used during operation.

Some actions that are more advanced, or not used in the daily operation, are described in *Operating manual - IRC5 Integrator's guide*.

Who should read this manual?

This manual is intended for:

- · operators
- · product technicians
- · service technicians
- · robot programmers

How to read the operating manual

The operating manual is structured in the following chapters.

| Chapter | Title | Content |
|---------|---|--|
| 1 | Safety | Safety instructions and warnings. |
| 2 | Welcome to IRC5 | Descriptions of the IRC5. |
| 3 | Navigating and handling the FlexPendant | Descriptions of the FlexPendant's user interface and basic procedures. |
| 4 | Jogging | Procedures for jogging. |
| 5 | Programming and testing | Procedures for programming and testing, including descriptions of some concepts for programming. |
| 6 | Running in production | Procedures for running in production. |
| 7 | Handling inputs and outputs, I/O | Procedures for handling I/O. |
| 8 | Handling the event log | Procedures for the event log. |
| 9 | Backup and restore | Procedures for backup and restore of systems. |
| 10 | Calibrating | Procedures for calibrating the robot system. |

Prerequisites

The reader should:

- Be familiar with the concepts described in *Operating manual Getting started, IRC5 and RobotStudio*.
- Be trained in robot operation.

Continued

| Product manual - IRC5 IRC5 with main computer DSQC1000. | 3HAC047136-001 |
|--|----------------|
| Product manual - IRC5 Panel Mounted Controller IRC5 with main computer DSQC1000. | 3HAC047137-001 |
| Product manual - IRC5 Compact IRC5 with main computer DSQC1000. | 3HAC047138-001 |
| Operating manual - Getting started, IRC5 and RobotStudio | 3HAC027097-001 |
| Operating manual - RobotStudio | 3HAC032104-001 |
| Operating manual - Service Information System | 3HAC050944-001 |
| Operating manual - Trouble shooting IRC5 | 3HAC020738-001 |
| Operating manual - IRC5 Integrator's guide | 3HAC050940-001 |
| Operating manual - IRC5 with T10 | 3HAC050943-001 |
| Technical reference manual - System parameters | 3HAC050948-001 |
| Technical reference manual - RAPID overview | 3HAC050947-001 |
| Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types | 3HAC050917-001 |
| Technical reference manual - RAPID kernel | 3HAC050946-001 |
| Application manual - Additional axes and stand alone controller | 3HAC051016-001 |
| Application manual - Controller software IRC5 | 3HAC050798-001 |
| Application manual - MultiMove | 3HAC050961-001 |
| Operating manual - Calibration Pendulum | 3HAC16578-1 |
| Operating manual - IRC5 with T10 | 3HAC050943-001 |



Note

The document numbers that are listed for software documents are valid for RobotWare 6. Equivalent documents are available for RobotWare 5.

Revisions

| Revision | Description | |
|----------|---|--|
| - | Released with RobotWare 6.0. | |
| A | Released with RobotWare 6.02. • Added information about time limitation to the section Switching to manual full speed mode on page 258. | |
| | Added information on Load diagram check in the section LoadIdentify, load identification service routine on page 220. | |
| | Updated the section Changing date and time on page 112. | |
| В | Released with RobotWare 6.03. • Updated the section Step mode on page 86. | |
| | Updated the section Illustration Control Panel on page 69. | |
| | Updated the section System Info on page 72. | |
| | Added a warning note regarding load data in the sections Before you start programming on page 145, Tools on page 173, Payloads on page 198, and Service routines on page 213. | |

Continued

| Revision | Description |
|----------|---|
| С | Released with RobotWare 6.04. Updated the section <i>Quickset menu, Increment on page 84.</i> Updated the section <i>Restore the system on page 283.</i> Updated the section <i>LoadIdentify, load identification service routine on page 220.</i> |
| D | Released with RobotWare 6.05. Added the new section Managing the display of controller and system name on page 108. Added the new section Brake check on page 229. |
| | Updated the section Defining a view to be shown during operating mode change or startup on page 101. |
| | Updated descriptions of stops in section Protective stop and emergency stop on page 20. |
| | Removed the information about time limitation in the section Switching to manual full speed mode on page 258. |

Product documentation, IRC5

Categories for user documentation from ABB Robotics

The user documentation from ABB Robotics is divided into a number of categories. This listing is based on the type of information in the documents, regardless of whether the products are standard or optional.

All documents listed can be ordered from ABB on a DVD. The documents listed are valid for IRC5 robot systems.

Product manuals

Manipulators, controllers, DressPack/SpotPack, and most other hardware is delivered with a **Product manual** that generally contains:

- · Safety information.
- Installation and commissioning (descriptions of mechanical installation or electrical connections).
- Maintenance (descriptions of all required preventive maintenance procedures including intervals and expected life time of parts).
- Repair (descriptions of all recommended repair procedures including spare parts).
- · Calibration.
- · Decommissioning.
- Reference information (safety standards, unit conversions, screw joints, lists of tools).
- Spare parts list with exploded views (or references to separate spare parts lists).
- · Circuit diagrams (or references to circuit diagrams).

Technical reference manuals

The technical reference manuals describe reference information for robotics products.

- *Technical reference manual Lubrication in gearboxes*: Description of types and volumes of lubrication for the manipulator gearboxes.
- *Technical reference manual RAPID overview*: An overview of the RAPID programming language.
- Technical reference manual RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types:
 Description and syntax for all RAPID instructions, functions, and data types.
- Technical reference manual RAPID kernel: A formal description of the RAPID programming language.
- Technical reference manual System parameters: Description of system parameters and configuration workflows.

Application manuals

Specific applications (for example software or hardware options) are described in **Application manuals**. An application manual can describe one or several applications.

An application manual generally contains information about:

- The purpose of the application (what it does and when it is useful).
- What is included (for example cables, I/O boards, RAPID instructions, system parameters, DVD with PC software).
- · How to install included or required hardware.
- How to use the application.
- Examples of how to use the application.

Operating manuals

The operating manuals describe hands-on handling of the products. The manuals are aimed at those having first-hand operational contact with the product, that is production cell operators, programmers, and trouble shooters.

The group of manuals includes (among others):

- Operating manual Emergency safety information
- · Operating manual General safety information
- Operating manual Getting started, IRC5 and RobotStudio
- · Operating manual IRC5 Integrator's guide
- · Operating manual IRC5 with FlexPendant
- · Operating manual RobotStudio
- Operating manual Trouble shooting IRC5



1.1 About this chapter

1 Safety

1.1 About this chapter

Introduction to safety

This chapter describes safety principles and procedures to be used when a robot or robot system is operated.

It does not cover how to design for safety nor how to install safety related equipment. These topics are covered in the Product Manuals supplied with the robot system.

1.2 Applicable standards

1.2 Applicable standards



Note

The listed standards are valid at the time of the release of this document. Phased out or replaced standards are removed from the list when needed.

Standards, EN ISO

The product is designed in accordance with the requirements of:

| Standard | Description |
|------------------------------------|--|
| EN ISO 12100 | Safety of machinery - General principles for design - Risk assessment and risk reduction |
| EN ISO 13849-1 | Safety of machinery, safety related parts of control systems - Part 1: General principles for design |
| EN ISO 13850 | Safety of machinery - Emergency stop - Principles for design |
| EN ISO 10218-1 | Robots for industrial environments - Safety requirements -Part 1 Robot |
| EN ISO 9787 | Robots and robotic devices Coordinate systems and motion nomenclatures |
| EN ISO 9283 | Manipulating industrial robots, performance criteria, and related test methods |
| EN ISO 14644-1 ⁱ | Classification of air cleanliness |
| EN ISO 13732-1 | Ergonomics of the thermal environment - Part 1 |
| EN IEC 61000-6-4 (option 129-1) | EMC, Generic emission |
| EN IEC 61000-6-2 | EMC, Generic immunity |
| EN IEC 60974-1 ⁱⁱ | Arc welding equipment - Part 1: Welding power sources |
| EN IEC 60974-10 ⁱⁱ | Arc welding equipment - Part 10: EMC requirements |
| EN IEC 60204-1 | Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1 General requirements |
| IEC 60529 | Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code) |

i Only robots with protection Clean Room.

European standards

| Standard | Description |
|----------|--|
| EN 614-1 | Safety of machinery - Ergonomic design principles - Part 1: Terminology and general principles |
| EN 574 | Safety of machinery - Two-hand control devices - Functional aspects - Principles for design |

ii Only valid for arc welding robots. Replaces EN IEC 61000-6-4 for arc welding robots.

1.2 Applicable standards Continued

Other standards

| Standard | Description |
|------------------|---|
| ANSI/RIA R15.06 | Safety requirements for industrial robots and robot systems |
| ANSI/UL 1740 | Safety standard for robots and robotic equipment |
| CAN/CSA Z 434-14 | Industrial robots and robot Systems - General safety requirements |

1.3.1 Safety signals in the manual

1.3 Safety terminology

1.3.1 Safety signals in the manual

Introduction to safety signals

This section specifies all dangers that can arise when doing the work described in the user manuals. Each danger consists of:

- A caption specifying the danger level (DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION) and the type of danger.
- A brief description of what will happen if the operator/service personnel do not eliminate the danger.
- Instruction about how to eliminate danger to simplify doing the work.

Danger levels

The table below defines the captions specifying the danger levels used throughout this manual.

| Symbol | Designation | Significance |
|--------------|----------------------------------|---|
| xx0200000022 | DANGER | Warns that an accident will occur if the instructions are not followed, resulting in a serious or fatal injury and/or severe damage to the product. It applies to warnings that apply to danger with, for example, contact with high voltage electrical units, explosion or fire risk, risk of poisonous gases, risk of crushing, impact, fall from height, and so on. |
| xx010000002 | WARNING | Warns that an accident <i>may</i> occur if the instructions are not followed that can lead to serious injury, possibly fatal, and/or great damage to the product. It applies to warnings that apply to danger with, for example, contact with high voltage electrical units, explosion or fire risk, risk of poisonous gases, risk of crushing, impact, fall from height, etc. |
| xx0200000024 | ELECTRICAL SHOCK | Warns for electrical hazards which could result in severe personal injury or death. |
| xx0100000003 | CAUTION | Warns that an accident may occur if the instructions are not followed that can result in injury and/or damage to the product. It also applies to warnings of risks that include burns, eye injury, skin injury, hearing damage, crushing or slipping, tripping, impact, fall from height, etc. Furthermore, it applies to warnings that include function requirements when fitting and removing equipment where there is a risk of damaging the product or causing a breakdown. |
| xx0200000023 | ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) | Warns for electrostatic hazards which could result in severe damage to the product. |

1.3.1 Safety signals in the manual Continued

| Symbol | Designation | Significance |
|--------------|-------------|--|
| xx0100000004 | NOTE | Describes important facts and conditions. |
| xx010000098 | TIP | Describes where to find additional information or how to do an operation in an easier way. |

1.3.2 Protective stop and emergency stop

1.3.2 Protective stop and emergency stop

Overview

The protective stops and emergency stops are described in the product manual for the controller.

1.3.3 Safe use of the jogging device

1.3.3 Safe use of the jogging device

Three-position enabling device

The three-position enabling device is a manually operated, constant pressure push-button which, when continuously activated in one position only, allows potentially hazardous functions but does not initiate them. In any other position, hazardous functions are stopped safely.

The three-position enabling device is of a specific type where you must press the push-button only half-way to activate it. In the fully in and fully out positions, operating the robot is impossible.



Note

The three-position enabling device is a push-button located on the jogging device which, when pressed halfway in, switches the system to MOTORS ON. When the enabling device is released or pushed all the way in, the manipulator switches to the MOTORS OFF state.

To ensure safe use of the jogging device, the following must be implemented:

- The enabling device must never be rendered inoperational in any way.
- During programming and testing, the enabling device must be released as soon as there is no need for the robot to move.
- Anyone entering the working space of the robot must always bring the
 jogging device with him/her. This is to prevent anyone else from taking
 control of the robot without his/her knowledge.

Hold-to-run function

The hold-to-run function allows movement when a button connected to the function is actuated manually and immediately stops any movement when released. The hold-to-run function can only be used in manual mode.

How to operate the hold-to-run function for IRC5 is described in *Operating manual - IRC5 with FlexPendant*.

1.4.1 Stop the system

1.4 How to deal with an emergency

1.4.1 Stop the system

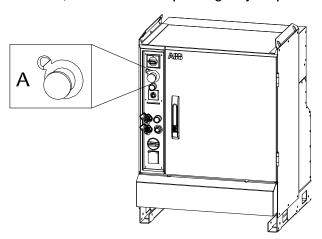
Overview

Press any of the emergency stop buttons immediately if:

- There are any personnel in the robot manipulator area, while the manipulator is working.
- · The manipulator causes harm to personnel or mechanical equipment.

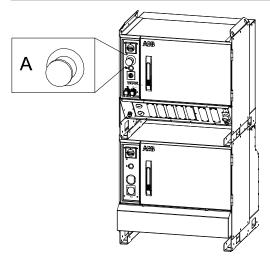
The controller emergency stop button

The emergency stop button on the controller is located on the front of the cabinet. However, this can differ depending on your plant design.



xx0600003423

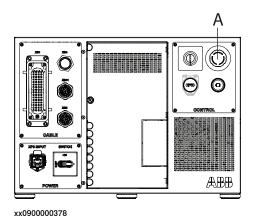
A Emergency stop button, Single Cabinet Controller



xx0600003424

A Emergency stop button, Dual Cabinet Controller

1.4.1 Stop the system Continued



A Emergency stop button, IRC5 Compact

The FlexPendant emergency stop button



xx1400001445

A Emergency stop button

Other emergency stop devices

The plant designer may have placed additional emergency stop devices in convenient places. Please consult your plant or cell documentation to find out where these are placed.

1.4.2 Extinguishing fires

1.4.2 Extinguishing fires

Precautions

In case of a fire always make sure both you and your coworkers are safe before performing any fire extinguishing activities. In case of injury always make sure these are treated first.

Select fire extinguisher

Always use carbon dioxide extinguishers when extinguishing fires in electrical equipment such as the robot or the controller. Do not use water or foam.

1.4.3 Recover from emergency stops

1.4.3 Recover from emergency stops

Overview

Recovering from an emergency stop is a simple but important procedure. This procedure ensures that the robot system is not returned to production while maintaining a hazardous condition.

Reset the latch of emergency stop buttons

All push-button style emergency stop devices have a latching feature that must be released in order to remove the emergency stop condition of the device.

In many cases this is done by twisting the push-button as marked, but there are also devices where you pull the button to release the latch.

Reset automatic emergency stop devices

All automatic emergency stop devices also have some kind of latching feature that must be released. Consult your plant or cell documentation to see how your robot system is configured.

Recover from emergency stops

| | Action | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Make sure the hazardous situation that resulted in the emergency stop condition no longer exists. | |
| 2 | Locate and reset the device or devices that gave the emergency stop condition. | |
| 3 | Press the Motors On button to recover from the emergency stop condition. | |

1.5.1 Overview

1.5 Working in a safe manner

1.5.1 Overview

About the robot

A robot is heavy and extremely powerful regardless of its speed. A pause or longer stop in movement can be followed by a fast hazardous movement. Even if a pattern of movement is predicted, a change in operation can be triggered by an external signal resulting in an unexpected movement without warning.

Therefore, it is important that all safety regulations are followed when entering safeguarded space.

About this section

In this section some most basic rules of conduct for you as a robot system user are suggested. However, it is impossible to cover each and every specific situation.

1.5.2 For your own safety

General principles

A few simple principles should be followed in order to operate the robot system safely:

- Always operate the robot system in manual mode if personnel are inside safeguarded space.
- Always bring the jogging device along when you enter safeguarded space so that robot control is in your hands.
- Watch out for rotating or moving tools such as milling cutters and saws. Make sure those are stopped before you approach the robot.
- Watch out for hot surfaces both on work pieces as well as on the robot system. The robot's motors can become fairly hot if run for a long time.
- Watch out for grippers and objects gripped. If the gripper is opened the work
 piece could fall and cause injuries or damage equipment. The gripper can
 be very powerful and can also cause injuries if not operated in a safe manner.
- Watch out for hydraulic and pneumatic systems and live electric parts. Even with power off residual energy in such circuits can be very dangerous.

Disconnected jogging device

Always put away a disconnected jogging device safe from any robot cell or controller to avoid that a disconnected unit is used when trying to stop the robot in a hazardous situation.



CAUTION

A disconnected jogging device should be stored in such a way that it cannot be mistaken for being connected to the controller.

Custom jogging device connections

Any means of connecting the jogging device with other than the supplied cable and its standard connector must not render the emergency stop button inoperative.

Always test the emergency stop button to make sure it works if a custom connection cable is used.

1.5.3 DANGER - Moving robots are potentially lethal!

1.5.3 DANGER - Moving robots are potentially lethal!

Description

Any moving robot is a potentially lethal machine.

When running, the robot may perform unexpected and sometimes irrational movements. Moreover, all movements are performed with great force and may seriously injure any personnel and/or damage any piece of equipment located within the working range of the robot.

Elimination

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Before attempting to run the robot, make sure all emergency stop equipment is correctly installed and connected. | Emergency stop equipment such as gates, tread mats, light curtains, etc. |
| 2 | Usually the hold-to-run function is active only in manual full speed mode. To increase safety it is also possible to activate hold-to-run for manual reduced speed with a system parameter. | |
| | The hold-to-run function is used in manual mode, not in automatic mode. | |
| 3 | Make sure no personnel are present within the working range of the robot before pressing the start button. | |

1.5.4 Handling of FlexPendant

Handling of FlexPendant

The FlexPendant is a high-quality handheld terminal equipped with highly sensitive state-of-the-art electronics. To avoid malfunctions or damage through improper handling, follow these instructions during operation.

The FlexPendant may only be used for the purposes mentioned in this manual. The FlexPendant was developed, manufactured, tested and documented in accordance with applicable safety standards. If you follow the instructions regarding safety and use as described in this manual, the product will, in the normal case, neither cause personal injury nor damage to machinery and equipment.

Handling and cleaning

- Handle with care. Do not drop, throw, or give the FlexPendant strong shock.
 It can cause breakage or failure.
- If the FlexPendant is subjected to shock, always verify that the safety functions (three-position enabling device and emergency stop) work and are not damaged.
- When not using the device, hang it on the wall bracket provided for storage so it does not accidentally fall.
- Always use and store the FlexPendant in such a way that the cable does not become a tripping hazard.
- Never use sharp objects (such as screwdriver or pen) for operating the touch screen. This could damage the touch screen. Instead use your finger or a stylus (located on the back on FlexPendant with USB port).
- Clean the touch screen regularly. Dust and small particles can clog the touch screen and cause it to malfunction.
- Never clean the FlexPendant with solvents, scouring agent, or scrubbing sponges. Use a soft cloth and a bit of water or mild cleaning agent.
 See Product manual - IRC5, section Cleaning the FlexPendant.
- Always close the protective cap on the USB port when no USB device is connected. The port can break or malfunction if exposed to dirt or dust.



CAUTION

A disconnected FlexPendant should be stored in such a way that it cannot be mistaken for being connected to the controller.

Cabling and power supply

- Turn off the power supply before opening the cable entrance area of the FlexPendant. Otherwise the components could be destroyed or undefined signals could occur.
- Make sure that nobody trips over the cable to prevent the device from falling to the ground.
- · Take care not to squeeze and thus damage the cable with any object.

1.5.4 Handling of FlexPendant Continued

 Do not lay the cable over sharp edges since this can damage the cable sheath.

Waste disposal

Observe the national regulations when disposing of electronic components! When replacing components, please dispose of used components properly.

Foreseeable misuse of three-position enabling device

Foreseeable misuse means that it is not allowed to jam the three-position enabling device in the enabling position. The foreseeable misuse of the enabling device must be restricted.

When releasing and then pressing the three-position enabling device again, make sure to wait for the system to go to Motors Off state before pressing again.

Otherwise you will receive an error message.

1.5.5 Safety tools

Safeguarding mechanisms

Your robot system can be equipped with a vast range of safeguards such as door interlocks, safety light curtains, safety mats, and others. The most common is the door interlock of the robot cell that temporarily stops the robot if you open it.

The controller has three separate safeguarding mechanisms, the *general mode* safeguarded stop (GS), the automatic mode safeguarded stop (AS) and the superior safeguarded stop (SS).

| Safeguards connected to | are |
|-------------------------|---|
| the GS mechanism | always active regardless of the operating mode. |
| the AS mechanism | only active when the system is in automatic mode. |
| the SS mechanism | always active regardless of the operating mode. |

Please consult your plant or cell documentation to see how your robot system is configured and where the safeguarding mechanisms are placed and how they work.

Safety supervision

The emergency stop and safeguarding mechanisms are supervised so that any failure is detected by the controller and the robot is stopped until the problem is solved.

Built-in stop functions

The controller continuously monitor hardware and software functionality. If any problems or errors are detected the robot is stopped until the problem has been solved.

| If the failure is | then |
|--|--|
| simple and can easily be solved | a simple program stop is issued (SYSSTOP). |
| minor and can be solved | a SYSHALT is issued which results in a protective stop. |
| major, for instance concerns broken hardware | a SYSFAIL is issued which results in an emergency stop. The controller must be restarted in order to return to normal operation. |

Restricting the robot's working range

The robot's working range can be restricted by means of mechanical stops or software functions, or by a combination of both.

Please consult your plant or cell documentation to see how your robot system is configured.

1.5.6 Safety in manual mode

1.5.6 Safety in manual mode

What is the manual mode?

In manual mode the manipulator movement is under manual control. The three-position enabling device must be pressed to activate the motors of the manipulator, that is, enabling movement.

The manual mode is used when creating and verifying programs, and when commissioning a manipulator system.

There are two manual modes:

- Manual reduced speed mode, usually called manual mode.
- Manual full speed mode (not available in USA or Canada).

What is the manual full speed mode?

In manual full speed mode, the manipulator can move in programmed speed but only under manual control.

Operating speed

In manual reduced speed mode the movement is limited to 250 mm/s.

When in manual mode the manipulator is operated with personnel in close proximity. Maneuvering an industrial manipulator is potentially dangerous and therefore maneuvers should be performed in a controlled fashion.

In manual full speed mode, the manipulator can move in programmed speed but only under manual control. The manual full speed mode should only be used while all personnel are outside safeguarded space and only by specifically trained personnel extra aware of the implied risks.

Bypassed safeguard mechanisms

Automatic mode safeguarded stop (AS) mechanisms are bypassed while operating in manual mode.

The three-position enabling device

In manual mode the motors of the manipulator are activated by the three-position enabling device on the FlexPendant. This way the manipulator can only move as long as the device is pressed.

In order to run a program in manual full speed mode it is necessary, for safety reasons, to keep pressing both the three-position enabling device and the Start button. This hold-to-run function also applies when stepping through a program in manual full speed mode.

The three-position enabling device is designed so that its push-button must be pressed just half-way to activate the motors of the manipulator. Both in its all-out and full-in positions the manipulator will not move.

1.5.6 Safety in manual mode Continued

The hold-to-run function

The hold-to-run function allows stepping or running a program in manual full speed mode. Note that jogging does not require the hold-to-run function, regardless of operating mode. The hold-to-run function can also be activated for manual reduced speed mode.

1.5.7 Safety in automatic mode

1.5.7 Safety in automatic mode

What is the automatic mode?

The automatic mode is used for running the robot program in production.

In automatic mode the safety function of the three-position enabling device is bypassed so that the manipulator is allowed to move without human intervention.

Active safeguard mechanisms

Both the general mode stop (GS) mechanisms, the automatic mode stop (AS) mechanisms, and the superior stop (SS) are all active while operating in automatic mode.

Coping with process disturbances

Process disturbances may not only affect a specific manipulator cell but an entire chain of systems even if the problem originates in a specific cell.

Extra care must be taken during such a disturbance since that chain of events may create hazardous operations not seen when operating the single manipulator cell. All remedial actions must be performed by personnel with good knowledge of the entire production line, not only the malfunctioning manipulator.

Process disturbance examples

A manipulator picking components from a conveyer might be taken out of production due to a mechanical malfunction, while the conveyer must remain running in order to continue production in the rest of the production line. This means, of course, that extra care must be taken by the personnel preparing the manipulator in close proximity to the running conveyor.

A welding manipulator needs maintenance. Taking the welding manipulator out of production also means that a work bench as well as a material handling manipulator must be taken out of production to avoid personnel hazards.

2.1 About this chapter

2 Welcome to IRC5

2.1 About this chapter

Overview

This chapter presents an overview of the FlexPendant, the IRC5 controller, and RobotStudio.

A basic IRC5 robot system consists of a robot controller, the FlexPendant, RobotStudio, an enabling deivce, RobotApps, and one or several robots or other mechanical units. There may also be process equipment and additional software options.

This manual describes a basic IRC5 system without options. However, in a few places, the manual gives an overview of how options are used or applied. Most options are described in detail in their respective Application manual.

2.2 What is an IRC5 controller?

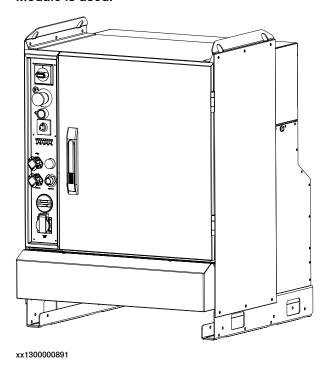
2.2 What is an IRC5 controller?

The IRC5 controller

The IRC5 controller contains all functions needed to move and control the robot. A controller consists of two modules, the Control Module and the Drive Module. The two modules are often combined in one controller cabinet, but referred to as modules.

- The Control Module contains all the control electronics such as main computer, I/O boards, and flash memory. The Control Module runs all software necessary for operating the robot (that is the RobotWare system).
- The Drive Module contains all the power electronics supplying the robot motors. An IRC5 Drive Module may contain nine drive units and handle six internal axes plus two or additional axes depending on the robot model.

When running more than one robot with one controller (MultiMove option), an extra Drive Module must be added for each additional robot. However, a single Control Module is used.



Related information

Product manual - IRC5, IRC5 of design M2004.

Product manual - IRC5, IRC5 of design 14.

Product manual - IRC5 Panel Mounted Controller, IRC5 of design M2004.

Product manual - IRC5 Panel Mounted Controller, IRC5 of design 14.

Product manual - IRC5 Compact, IRC5 of design M2004.

Product manual - IRC5 Compact, IRC5 of design 14.

Application manual - MultiMove.

2.3 What is a FlexPendant?

2.3 What is a FlexPendant?

Introduction to the FlexPendant

The FlexPendant is a hand held operator unit used to perform many of the tasks involved when operating a robot system: running programs, jogging the manipulator, modifying robot programs, and so on.

The FlexPendant is designed for continuous operation in harsh industrial environment. Its touch screen is easy to clean and resistant to water, oil and accidental welding splashes.

Complete computer and part of IRC5

The FlexPendant consists of both hardware and software and is a complete computer in itself. It is a part of IRC5, connected to the controller by an integrated cable and connector. The hot plug button option, however, makes it possible to disconnect the FlexPendant in automatic mode and continue running without it.

Main parts

These are the main parts of the FlexPendant.



xx1400001636

| Α | Connector | |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| В | Touch screen | |
| С | Emergency stop button | |
| D | Joystick | |
| E | USB port | |
| F | Three-position enabling device | |
| G | Stylus pen | |
| Н | Reset button | |

Joystick

Use the joystick to move the manipulator. This is called jogging the robot. There are several settings for how the joystick will move the manipulator.

USB port

Connect a USB memory to the USB port to read or save files. The USB memory is displayed as drive /USB:Removable in dialogs and FlexPendant Explorer.



Note

Close the protective cap on the USB port when not used.

Stylus pen

The stylus pen included with the FlexPendant is located on the back. Pull the small handle to release the pen.

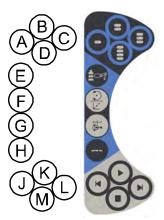
Use the stylus pen to tap on the touch screen when using the FlexPendant. Do not use screw drivers or other sharp objects.

Reset button

The reset button resets the FlexPendant, not the system on the controller.

Hard buttons

There are dedicated hardware buttons on the FlexPendant. You can assign your own functions to four of the buttons.

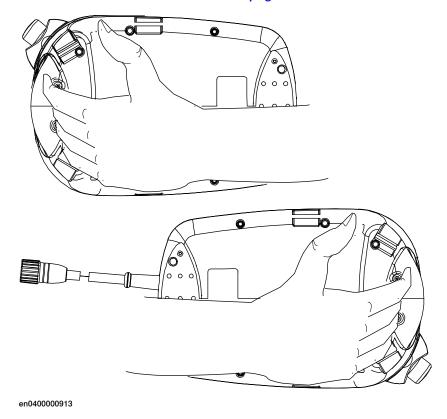


xx0900000023

| A - D | Durant and the large of the state of the sta | |
|-------|--|--|
| A - D | Programmable keys, 1 - 4. How to define their respective function is detailed in section Programmable keys,. | |
| E | Select mechanical unit. | |
| F | Toggle motion mode, reorient or linear. | |
| G | Toggle motion mode, axis 1-3 or axis 4-6. | |
| Н | Toggle increments. | |
| J | Step BACKWARD button. Executes one instruction backward as button is pressed. | |
| K | START button. Starts program execution. | |
| L | Step FORWARD button. Executes one instruction forward as button is pressed. | |
| М | STOP button. Stops program execution. | |

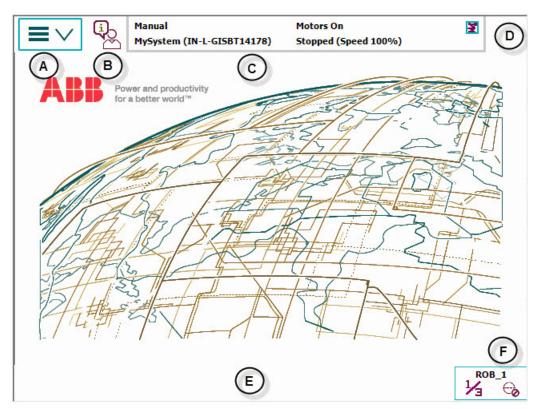
How to hold the FlexPendant

The FlexPendant is typically operated while being held in the hand. A right-handed person uses his left hand to support the device while the other hand performs operations on the touch screen. A left-hander, however, can easily rotate the display through 180 degrees and use his right hand to support the device. For more information about adapting the FlexPendant to left-handness, see *Adapting the FlexPendant for left-handed users on page 110*.



Touch screen elements

The illustration shows important elements of the FlexPendant touch screen.



xx1400001446

| Α | ABB menu |
|---|-----------------|
| В | Operator window |
| С | Status bar |
| D | Close button |
| E | Task bar |
| F | Quickset menu |

ABB menu

The following items can be selected from the ABB menu:

- HotEdit
- Inputs and Outputs
- Jogging
- Production Window
- Program Editor
- Program Data
- Backup and Restore
- Calibration
- Control Panel
- Event Log

2.3 What is a FlexPendant?

Continued

- FlexPendant Explorer
- System Info
- · etc.

This is further described in section The ABB menu on page 54.

Operator window

The operator window displays messages from robot programs. This usually happens when the program needs some kind of operator response in order to continue. This is described in section *Operator window on page 76*.

Status bar

The status bar displays important information about system status, such as operating mode, motors on/off, program state and so on. This is described in section *Status bar on page 77*.

Close button

Tapping the close button closes the presently active view or application.

Task bar

You can open several views from the ABB menu, but only work with one at a time. The task bar displays all open views and is used to switch between these.

Quickset menu

The quickset menu provides settings for jogging and program execution. This is described in section *The Quickset menu on page 78*.

Operated in twenty languages

As the name suggests, the FlexPendant is designed with flexibility and adaptation to end-users' specific needs in mind. Currently, it can be operated in twenty different languages, including Asian character-based languages such as Chinese and Japanese.

Switching from one of the installed languages to another is easy. For more information about changing language, see *Changing language on page 114*.

2.4 What is a T10?

Introduction

The T10 is a jogging device used to jog manipulators and mechanical units in an intuitive way by pointing the device in the direction of movement.

When using a FlexPendant for jogging, a predefined coordinate system is selected, such as world coordinates or tool coordinates, and the manipulator moves in the desired direction along the selected coordinate system.

Using the T10 for jogging is quite similar, but instead of selecting a coordinate system, the direction is shown in space with the device itself. For example when jogging vertically the T10 is held in vertical direction, when jogging horizontally the T10 is held in horizontal direction, etc. This is achieved thanks to the built in inertial measurement unit, consisting of accelerometers and gyroscopes, which measure the motion of the device in space.

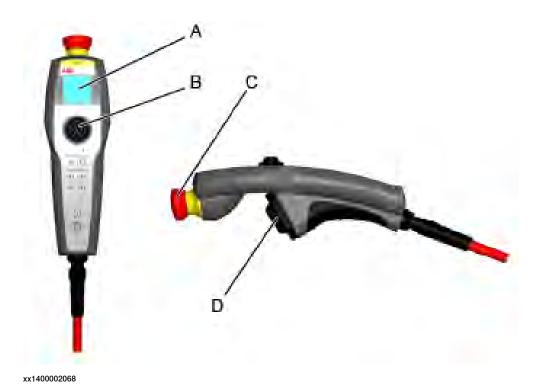
The joystick is used for adjusting the jog speed and the positive or negative direction. The forward and backward movement of the joystick corresponds directly to the movement of the manipulator, which is the most intuitive way. The left and right movement of the joystick is used for reorientation.

For more information about the T10, see Operating manual - IRC5 with T10.

Prerequisites

The RobotWare option *976-1 T10 Support* is necessary to run the T10 with the IRC5 robot controller.

Overview



2.4 What is a T10? Continued

| | Description | |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| Α | Display | |
| В | Joystick | |
| С | Emergency stop button | |
| D | Three-position enabling device | |

2.5 What is RobotStudio Online?

Introduction to RobotStudio Online

RobotStudio Online is a suite of **Windows Store** applications intended to run on **Windows 10** tablets. It provides functionality for the shop floor commissioning of robot systems.



Note

Some of the functionality requires use of a safety device such as the T10 jogging device or the JSHD4 three position safety device. For more information on T10, see *Operating manual - IRC5 with T10*.

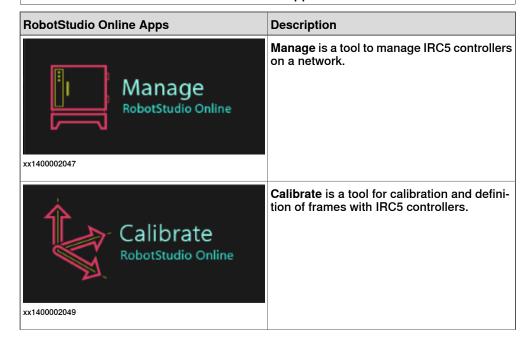
You can run these apps on a tablet that communicates with the robot controller wirelessly. To enable certain functionality, such as entering manual mode and enabling power to the mechanical unit motors, you need a safety device that is connected to the robot using the same plug that alternatively is used to connect the FlexPendant.

The following RobotStudio Online apps are available in the Microsoft Windows Store:

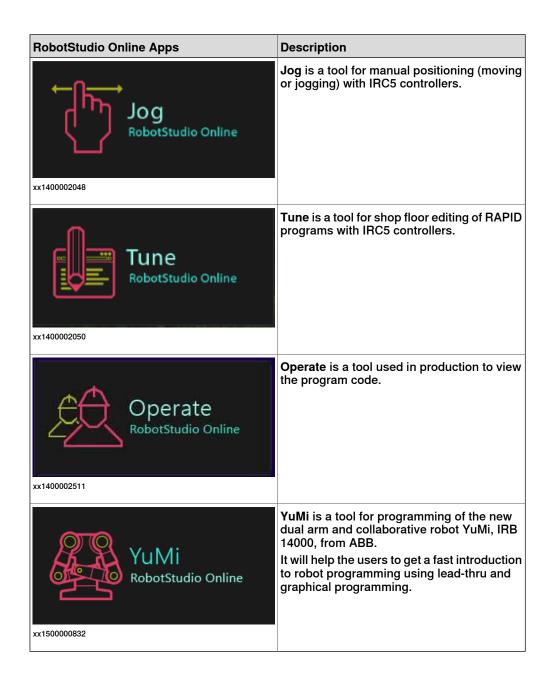


Note

You must have Windows 8.1 to run these Apps.



2.5 What is RobotStudio Online? *Continued*



2.6 What is RobotStudio?

Overview

RobotStudio is an engineering tool for the configuration and programming of ABB robots, both real robots on the shop floor and virtual robots in a PC. To achieve true offline programming, RobotStudio utilizes ABB VirtualRobot™ Technology.

RobotStudio has adopted the Microsoft Office Fluent User Interface. The Office Fluent UI is also used in Microsoft Office. As in Office, the features of RobotStudio are designed in a workflow-oriented way.

With add-ins, RobotStudio can be extended and customized to suit your specific needs. Add-ins are developed using the RobotStudio SDK. With the SDK, it is also possible to develop custom SmartComponents which exceed the functionality provided by RobotStudio's base components.

For more information, see Operating manual - RobotStudio.

RobotStudio for real controllers

RobotStudio allows, for example, the following operations when connected to a real controller:

- Installing and modifying systems on RobotWare 6 controllers, using the Installation Manager.
- · Text-based programing and editing, using the RAPID Editor.
- · File manager for the controller.
- · Administrating the User Authorization System.
- · Configuring system parameters.

2.7 When to use different jogging devices

2.7 When to use different jogging devices

Overview

For operating and managing the robot, you can use any of the following:

- FlexPendant: Optimized for handling robot motions and ordinary operation
- RobotStudio: Optimized for configuration, programming and other tasks not related to the daily operation.
- T10: Intended for jogging the robots in an intuitive way by selecting desired directions of movement.
- RobotStudio Online Apps: Optimized for jogging, managing, working with the frames, calibration methods and RAPID programs available in the robot controller.

Start, restart and shut down the controller

| То | Use |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Start the controller | The power switch on the controller's front panel. |
| Restart the controller | The FlexPendant, RobotStudio, RobotStudio Online Apps or the power switch on the controller's front panel. |
| Shut down the controller | The power switch on the controller's front panel or the FlexPendant, tap Restart, then Advanced. |
| Shut down the main computer | The FlexPendant. |

Run and control robot programs

| То | Use |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Jog a robot | The FlexPendant or T10 . |
| Start or stop a robot program | The FlexPendant, RobotStudio or RobotStudio Online Apps. |
| Start and stop background tasks | The FlexPendant, RobotStudio or RobotStudio Online Apps. |

Communicate with the controller

| То | Use |
|--|--|
| Acknowledge events | The FlexPendant or RobotStudio Online Apps. |
| View and save the controller's event logs | RobotStudio, FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |
| Back up the controller's software to files on the PC or a server | RobotStudio, FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |
| Back up the controller's software to files on the controller | The FlexPendant or RobotStudio Online Apps. |
| Transfer files between the controller and network drives | RobotStudio, FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |

2.7 When to use different jogging devices Continued

Program a robot

| То | Use | |
|--|--|--|
| Create or edit robot programs in a flexible way. This is suit- able for complex programs with a lot of logic, I/O signals or action instructions | RobotStudio to create the program's structure and most of the source code and the FlexPendant to store robot positions and make final adjustments to the program. When programming, RobotStudio provides the following advantages: • A text editor optimized for RAPID code, with auto-text and tool-tip information about instructions and parameters. • Program check with program error marking. • Close access to configuration and I/O editing. | |
| Create or edit a robot program in a supportive way. This is suitable for programs that mostly consist of move instruc- tions | The FlexPendant. When programming, the FlexPendant provides the following advantages: Instruction pick lists Program check and debug while writing Possibility to create robot positions while programming | |
| Add or edit robot positions | The FlexPendant or T10 with a combination of suitable RobotStudio Online Apps. | |
| Modify robot positions | The FlexPendant or T10 with a combination of suitable RobotStudio Online Apps. | |

Configure the robot's system parameters

| То | Use |
|---|--|
| Edit the system parameters of the running system | RobotStudio, FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |
| Save the robot's system parameters as configuration files | RobotStudio, FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |
| Load system parameters from configuration files to the running system | RobotStudio, FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |
| Load calibration data | RobotStudio, FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |

Create, modify and install systems

| То | Use |
|--|---|
| Create or modify a system | RobotStudio together with RobotWare and a valid RobotWare Key for systems based on RobotWare 5. |
| | RobotStudio together with RobotWare and license file for systems based on RobotWare 6. |
| Install a system on a controller | RobotStudio |
| Install a system on a controller from a USB memory | The FlexPendant. |

Calibration

| То | Use |
|---------------------------|---|
| Calibrate base frame etc. | The FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |

2.7 When to use different jogging devices *Continued*

| То | Use |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Calibrate tools, work objects etc. | The FlexPendant or the RobotStudio Online Apps. |

Related information

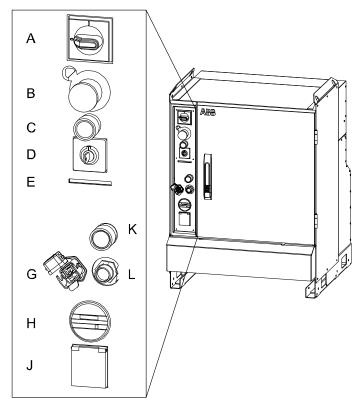
The table below specifies which manuals to read, when performing the various tasks referred to:

| Recommended use | for details, see manual | Document number |
|-----------------|---|-----------------|
| FlexPendant | Operating manual - IRC5 with Flex- Pendant | 3HAC050941-001 |
| RobotStudio | Operating manual - RobotStudio | 3HAC032104-001 |
| T10 | Operating manual - IRC5 with T10 | 3HAC050943-001 |

2.8 Buttons and ports on the controller

Buttons and ports on the controller

These are the buttons and ports on an IRC5 controller. Some buttons and ports are options and might not be available on your controller. The buttons and ports look the same but the placing can differ depending on the controller model (IRC5 Standard, IRC5 Compact, or IRC5 Panel Mounted Controller) and if there is an external operator's panel.



xx0600002782

| Α | Main switch |
|---|--|
| В | Emergency stop |
| С | Motors on |
| D | Mode switch |
| E | Safety chain LEDs (option) |
| G | Service port for PC (option) |
| Н | Duty time counter (option) |
| J | Service outlet 115/230 V, 200 W (option) |
| K | Hot plug button (option) |
| L | Connector for FlexPendant or T10 |

Related information

Product manual - IRC5, IRC5 of design 14.

2 Welcome to IRC5

2.8 Buttons and ports on the controller *Continued*

Product manual - IRC5 Panel Mounted Controller, IRC5 of design 14.

Product manual - IRC5 Compact, IRC5 of design 14.

Operating manual - Trouble shooting IRC5.

3 Navigating and handling FlexPendant

3.1 About this chapter

Introduction to this chapter

This chapter will help you to work efficiently with the FlexPendant. The important elements for navigation illustrated in *Touch screen elements on page 41* are described here.

All views of the ABB menu, the main element for navigation, are described in overview with references to further details on how to use their functions.

In addition, this chapter provides information about basic procedures, such as how to use the soft keyboard for entering text or numbers, how to scroll and zoom the graphical touch screen, and how to use the filtering function. How to log on and log off is also described.

Handling and trouble shooting the FlexPendant

How to handle and clean the FlexPendant is described in *Handling of FlexPendant* on page 29.

Trouble shooting the FlexPendant is described in *Operating manual - Trouble shooting IRC5*.

Hardware and software options

Note that this manual only covers views of a basic RobotWare system. Process applications such as arc welding, dispense, or plastics are started from the ABB menu but not described in this manual. All options are detailed in their respective application manual.

3.2.1 HotEdit menu

3.2 The ABB menu

3.2.1 HotEdit menu

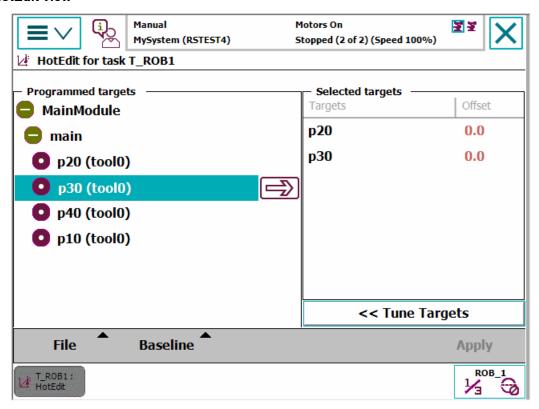
HotEdit

HotEdit is used to tune programmed positions. This can be done in all operating modes and even while the program is running. Both coordinates and orientation can be tuned.

HotEdit can only be used for named positions of the type robtarget (see limitations below).

The functions available in HotEdit may be restricted by the user authorization system, UAS.

Illustration of the HotEdit view



en0500001542

Functions available in HotEdit

| Programmed targets | Lists all named positions in a tree view. Select one or several positions to be tuned by tapping the arrow. Notice that if a position is used at several places in your program, any change made to the offset will take effect everywhere it is used. |
|--------------------|--|
| Selected targets | Lists all selected positions and their current offset. To remove a position from the selection you tap it and then tap the trash. |
| File | Saves and loads selections of positions to be tuned. If your system uses UAS, this may be the only way to select positions for HotEdit. |

3.2.1 HotEdit menu Continued

| Baseline | Used to apply or reject new offset values to the baseline, which holds the position values currently seen as the original ones. When you are satisfied with your HotEdit session and want to save the new offset values as the original position values, you apply these to the baseline. The old baseline values for these positions are now gone, and cannot be restored. |
|--------------|---|
| Tune targets | Displays settings for tuning: Coordinate system, Tuning mode and Tuning increment. Make your choices and then use the plus and minus icons to specify tuning of selected targets. |
| Apply | Tap Apply to make the settings made in the Tune Targets view take effect. Note that this does not change the baseline values of the positions! |



CAUTION

HotEdit offers advanced functionality, which has to be handled carefully. Be aware that new offset values will be used immediately by a running program once the **Apply** button has been tapped.

Before you start using the HotEdit functionality it is strongly recommended to read *Tuning positions with HotEdit on page 264*, where HotEdit limitations and procedures as well as the baseline concept is detailed.

Related information

See section *Modifying and tuning positions on page 259* for a general overview on how to modify programmed positions.

For modifying positions by jogging the robot to the new position, see section *Modifying positions in the Program Editor or Production Window on page 260*.

For detailed information about HotEdit, see *Tuning positions with HotEdit on page 264*.

Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types.

Technical reference manual - System parameters, section TopicController TypeModPos Settings.

3.2.2 FlexPendant Explorer

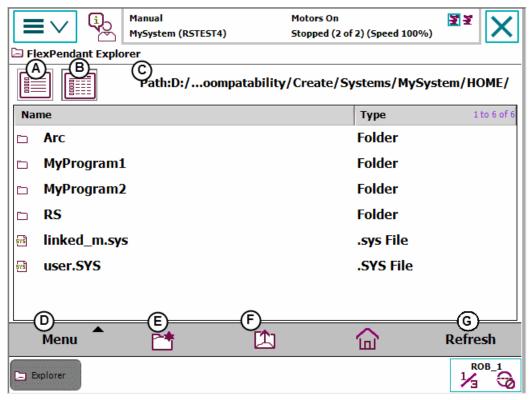
3.2.2 FlexPendant Explorer

FlexPendant Explorer

The FlexPendant Explorer is a file manager, similar to Windows Explorer, with which you can view the file system on the controller. You can also rename, delete, or move files or folders.

Illustration FlexPendant Explorer

The illustration details the FlexPendant Explorer.



en0400001130

| Α | Simple view. Tap to hide type in the file window. |
|---|---|
| В | Detailed view. Tap to show type in the file window. |
| С | Path. Displays folder paths. |
| D | Menu. Tap to display functions for file handling. |
| E | New folder. Tap to create a new folder in current folder. |
| F | Up one level. Tap to change to parent folder. |
| G | Refresh. Tap to refresh files and folders. |

3.2.3 Inputs and Outputs, I/O

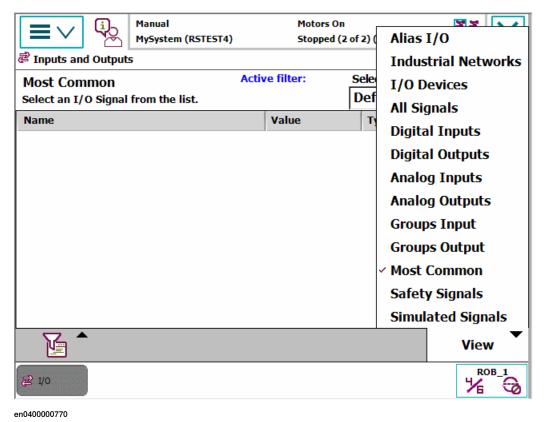
3.2.3 Inputs and Outputs, I/O

Inputs and outputs

Inputs and outputs, I/O, are signals used in the robot system. Signals are configured with system parameters.

Illustration Inputs and Outputs view

This illustration details the Inputs and Outputs view.



What is a signal

An I/O signal is the logical software representation of:

- Inputs or outputs located on an industrial network I/O device that is connected to an industrial network within the robot system (real I/O signal).
- An I/O signal without a representation on any industrial network I/O device (virtual I/O signal).

By specifying an I/O signal, a logical representation of the real or virtual I/O signal is created. The I/O signal configuration defines the specific system parameters for the I/O signal that will control the behavior of the I/O signal.

3.2.4 Jogging

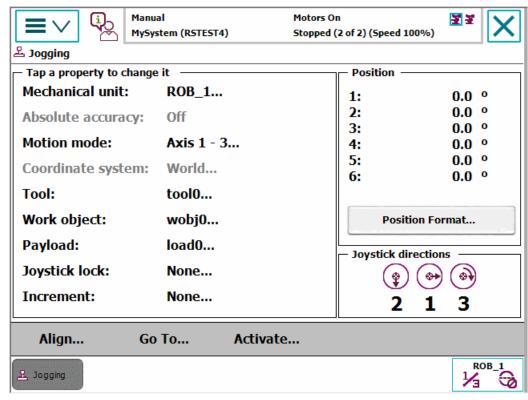
3.2.4 Jogging

Overview

The Jogging functions are found in the Jogging window. The most commonly used are also available under the Quickset menu.

Jogging menu

The illustration shows the functions available under the **Jogging** menu:



en0400000654

| Property/button | Function |
|-------------------|--|
| Mechanical unit | Select mechanical unit active for jogging, described in section Selecting mechanical unit for jogging on page 130. |
| Absolute accuracy | Absolute Accuracy: Off is default. If the robot has the Absolute Accuracy option, then Absolute Accuracy: On is displayed. |
| Motion mode | Select motion mode, described in section <i>Selecting motion mode on page 132</i> . |
| Coordinate system | Select coordinate system, described in section Selecting coordinate system on page 136. |
| Tool | Select tool, described in section Selecting tool, work object, and payload on page 133. |
| Work object | Select work object, described in section Selecting tool, work object, and payload on page 133. |
| Payload | Select payload, described in section Selecting tool, work object, and payload on page 133. |

3.2.4 Jogging Continued

| Property/button | Function |
|---------------------|---|
| Joystick lock | Select locking joystick directions, described in section <i>Locking the joystick in specific directions on page 137</i> . |
| Increment | Select movement increments, described in section <i>Incremental</i> movement for precise positioning on page 139. |
| Position | Displays each axis position in relation to the selected coordinate system, described in section <i>Reading the exact position on page 141</i> . |
| | If the position values are displayed in red, then the revolution counters must be updated. See section <i>Updating revolution</i> counters on page 290. |
| Position format | Select position format, described in section Reading the exact position on page 141. |
| Joystick directions | Displays current joystick directions, depending on setting in Motion mode. See section <i>Selecting motion mode on page 132</i> . |
| Align | Align the current tool to a coordinate system. See section <i>Aligning tools on page 143</i> . |
| Go To | Move the robot to a selected position/target. See section <i>Moving</i> the robot to a programmed position on page 270. |
| Activate | Activate a mechanical unit. |

3.2.5 Production Window

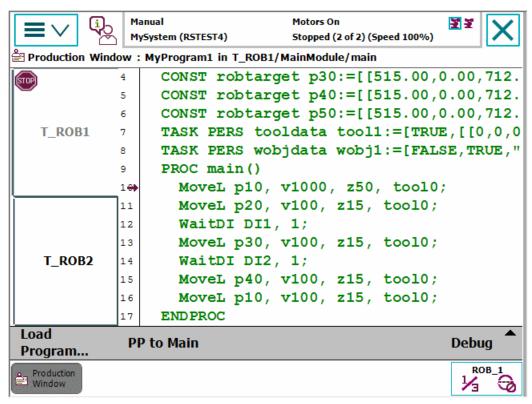
3.2.5 Production Window

Overview

The **Production Window** is used to view the program code while the program is running.

Illustration Production Window

This section illustrates the Production Window.



en0400000955

| Load Program | Load a new program. |
|--------------|--|
| PP to Main | Move the program pointer to the routine Main. |
| Debug | The Debug menu is available only in manual mode. Modify Position, see Modifying positions in the Program Editor or Production Window on page 260. Show Motion Pointerand Show Program Pointer, see About the Program and Motion Pointers on page 165. Edit Program, see Program Editor on page 63. |
| | Note The Visual Step mode icon indicates that the Step Into mode is not selected. This means that if the step mode is Step Out, Step Over, or Next Move the Visual Step mode icon is displayed. |

3.2.6 Program Data

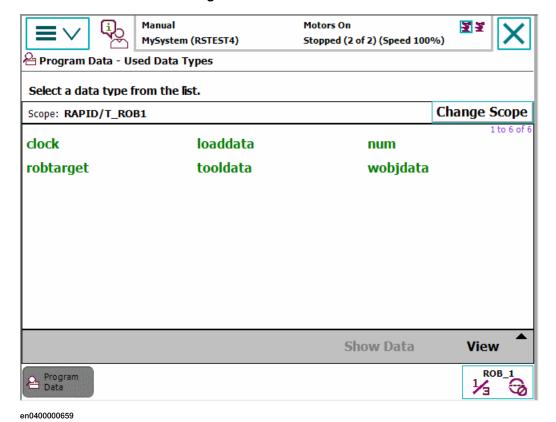
3.2.6 Program Data

Overview

The **Program Data** view contains functions for viewing and working with data types and instances. You can open more than one window of the **Program Data**, which can be useful when working with many instances or data types.

Illustration of Program Data

This section illustrates the Program Data view.



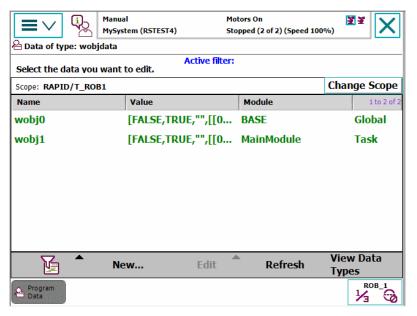
| Change Scope | Changes scope of data types in the list, see <i>Viewing data in specific tasks, modules, or routines on page 166</i> . |
|--------------|--|
| Show Data | Shows all instances of the selected data type. |
| View | Shows all or only used data types. |

3.2.6 Program Data

Continued

Illustration of a data type instances

This section illustrates a list of instances for a data type.



en0500001571

| Filter | Filters the instances, see Filtering data on page 93. |
|-----------------|---|
| New | Creates a new instance of the selected data type, see <i>Creating new data instance on page 167</i> . |
| Edit | Edits the selected instances, see Editing data instances on page 169. |
| Refresh | Refreshes the list of instances. |
| View Data Types | Returns to the Program Data menu. |

3.2.7 Program Editor

3.2.7 Program Editor

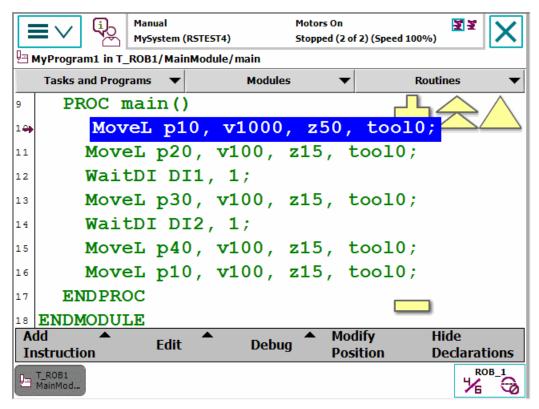
Overview

The **Program Editor** is where you create or modify programs. You can open more than one window of the **Program Editor**, which can be useful with the *Multitasking* option installed.

The Program Editor button in the task bar displays the name of the task.

Illustration of Program Editor

This section illustrates the Program Editor view.



en0400001143

| Tooks and Duagrams | Manufay myanyan anayatiana asa Handling of myanyana an |
|--------------------|--|
| Tasks and Programs | Menu for program operations, see <i>Handling of programs on page 148</i> . |
| Modules | Lists all modules, see <i>Handling of modules on page 151</i> . |
| Routines | Lists all routines, see <i>Handling of routines on page 155</i> . |
| Add Instruction | Opens instruction menu, see <i>Handling of instructions on page 160</i> . |
| Edit | Opens edit menu, see <i>Handling of instructions on page 160</i> . |
| Debug | Functions for moving the program pointer, service routines etc., see <i>Running a service routine on page 213</i> , and <i>About the Program and Motion Pointers on page 165</i> . |
| | Functions to search routines and view system data. Search Routine: Searches all routines across all the modules (except hidden routines). |
| | View System Data: Displays all the tasks. |

3.2.7 Program Editor

Continued

| Modify Position | See Modifying positions in the Program Editor or Production Window on page 260. |
|-------------------|---|
| Hide Declarations | Hides declarations to make the program code easier to read. |

Automatically activate mechanical unit for jogging

If *Multitasking* is installed with more than one mechanical unit and more than one motion task, then when switching between **Program Editor** windows the selection of mechanical unit for jogging is not effected. This means when jogging then the last used mechanical unit will move, which not neccessarily is the one used in the active **Program Editor**.

This setting can be changed with system parameters of the type *Automatically Switch Jog Unit* in the topic *Man-machine Communication*. Turn this setting on to automatically activate the mechanical unit last used in a **Program Editor** when switching to that window. This means that when jogging, the mechanical unit last used in the active **Program Editor** moves. Note that when switching between **Program Editors** in the same task, there is no change.

Mechanical units are manually activated for jogging in the **Jogging** window or in the Quickset menu, see *Selecting mechanical unit for jogging on page 130*.

3.2.8 Backup and Restore

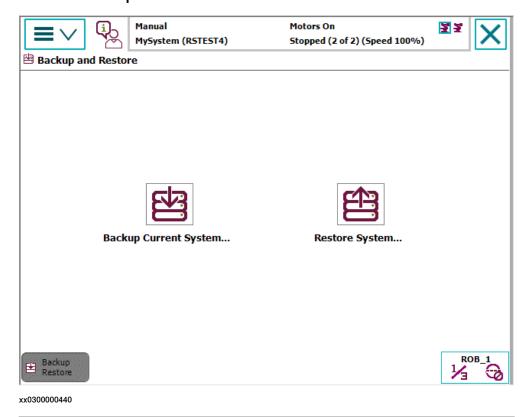
3.2.8 Backup and Restore

About backups

The **Backup and Restore** menu is used for performing backups and restoring the system. See section **Backup and restore on page 281**.

Illustration of Backup and Restore

This is the **Backup and Restore** menu.



| Backup Current System | See Back up the system on page 281. |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Restore System | See Restore the system on page 283. |

3.2.9 Calibration

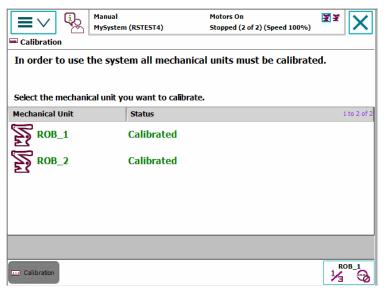
3.2.9 Calibration

About calibration

The **Calibration** menu is used to calibrate mechanical units in the robot system. Calibration can be performed using the option *Calibration Pendulum*. See *Operating manual - Calibration Pendulum*.

Illustration of Calibration menu

This illustration shows the **Calibration** menu. All mechanical units are listed and their calibration status is displayed in the **Status** column.

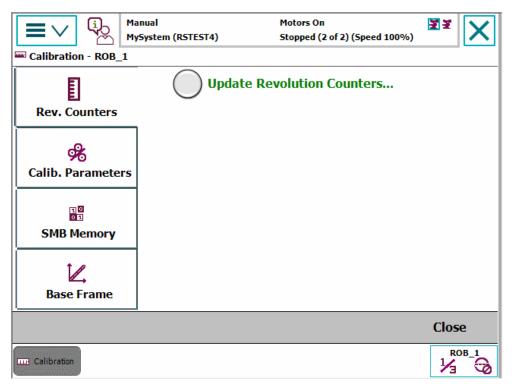


en0400001146

3.2.9 Calibration Continued

Calibration menu options

This illustration shows the **Calibration** menu options after selecting mechanical unit.



en0400000771

3 Navigating and handling FlexPendant

3.2.10 Control Panel

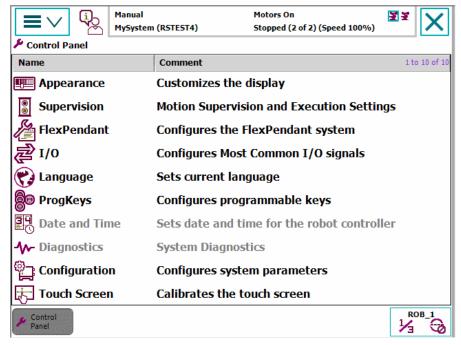
3.2.10 Control Panel

Control Panel

The Control Panel contains functions for customizing the robot system and the FlexPendant.

3.2.10 Control Panel Continued

Illustration Control Panel



en0400000914

| [_ | |
|---------------|---|
| Appearance | Settings to customize the brightness of the display. See <i>Changing brightness and contrast on page 109</i> . |
| Supervision | Settings for motion supervision and execution settings. See <i>Using motion supervision and non motion execution on page 243</i> . |
| | Note |
| | When changing the level of collision detection, it is necessary to bring the motors to off state for activating the changes. |
| FlexPendant | Configuration of views for operating mode switch and UAS, User Authorization System. See <i>Defining a view to be shown during operating mode change or startup on page 101</i> . |
| I/O | Settings for configuring the Most Common I/O list. See <i>Configuring Most Common I/O on page 113</i> . |
| Language | Settings for current language for the robot controller. See <i>Changing language on page 114</i> . |
| ProgKeys | Settings for the four programmable keys on the FlexPendant. See <i>Changing programmable keys on page 115</i> . |
| Date and Time | Settings for date and time for the robot controller. See <i>Changing date and time on page 112</i> . |
| Configuration | Configuration of the system parameters configuration. |
| Touch Screen | Recalibration settings for the touch screen. See <i>Calibrating the touch screen on page 117</i> . |

3.2.11 **Event Log**

3.2.11 Event Log

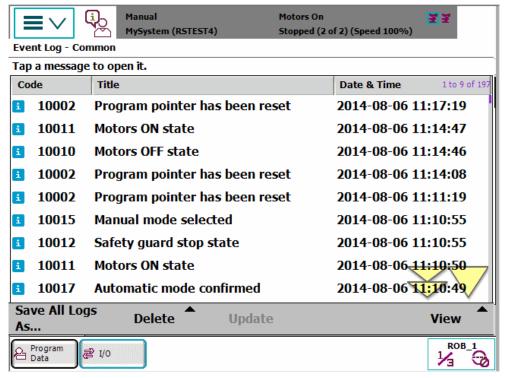
The Event Log

Robot systems are often operated without any personnel present. The logging function is a way to store information about past events for future reference in order to facilitate trouble shooting.

How to open the event log is described in Accessing the event log on page 277.

Illustration Event Log

The table is a brief summary of all actions that may be performed with the event log.



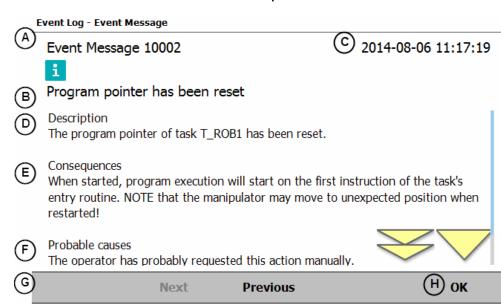
xx0300000447

| Function | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| View a message | Tap the message. The message structure is described in <i>An</i> event log message on page 71. |
| Scroll or zoom a message | See Scrolling and zooming on page 92. |
| Delete the log | See Deleting log entries on page 278. |
| Save the log | See Saving log entries on page 279. |
| Close the log | See Accessing the event log on page 277. |

3.2.11 Event Log Continued

An event log message

Each event log entry consists of a message describing the event in detail, and it often contains advice on how to solve the problem.



en0300000454

| Α | Event number. All errors are listed by numbers. |
|---|---|
| В | Event title. Briefly states what has happened. |
| С | Event time marker. Specifies exactly when the event occurred. |
| D | Description. A brief description of the event. Intended to assist in understanding the causes and implications of the event. |
| E | Consequences. A brief description of any consequences inflicted on the system, transition to other operation mode, emergency stop, caused by the particular event. Intended to assist in understanding the causes and implications of the event. |
| F | Probable causes. A list of probable causes, listed in order of probability. |
| G | Recommended actions. A list of the recommended correcting actions, based on the "Probable causes" specified above. These may range from "Replace the xx" to "Run test program xx", i.e. may be actions to isolate the problem as well as fixing it. |
| Н | Acknowledge or OK button. |

Related information about logs

Event log messages and more information about the event log are described in *Operating manual - Trouble shooting IRC5*.

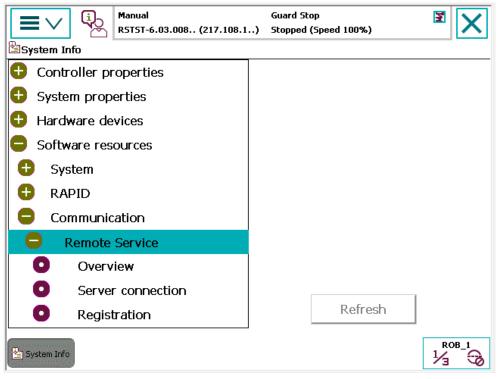
3.2.12 System Info

3.2.12 System Info

About System Info

System Info displays information about the controller and the loaded system. Here you can find the RobotWare version and options currently in use, current keys for control and drive modules, network connections, and so on.

Illustration of System Info view



en0400000968

Controller properties

It contains controller and network information. When the **Controller properties** is expanded the following are visible:

| Network connections | Service port and Local Area Network properties. |
|---------------------|---|
| Installed systems | List of installed systems. |

System properties

It contains information of the system that is currently in use. When the **System properties** is expanded the following are visible:

| Control module | Name and key of the Control Module. |
|--------------------|--|
| Options | Installed RobotWare options and languages. |
| Drive modules | Lists all Drive Modules. |
| Drive module x | Name and key of Drive Module x. |
| Options | Drive Module x options, with type of robot and so on. |
| Additional options | Any RobotWare options and Process application options. |

3.2.12 System Info Continued

Hardware devices

It contains information of all the hardware attached. When the **Hardware devices** is expanded the following are visible:

| Controller | Name and key of the Control Module. |
|---------------------|---|
| Computer system | Contains information of the main computer. |
| Power supply system | Contains information of the Power supply unit. |
| Panel board | Provides information about the panel board hardware and software. |
| Drive module x | It contains information about the axis computer, drive unit, and contactor board. |
| Mechanical units | Lists the data of Robots or external axes connected to the controller. |

Software resources

It contains information about the RAPID. When the **Software resources** is expanded the following are visible:

| System | Contains information about system uptime and memory. |
|-------------------|--|
| RAPID | Software used by the controller. |
| RAPID memory | Memory allocated for RAPID programs. |
| RAPID performance | Shows the execution load. |
| Communication | Contains information about Remote Service Embedded. |

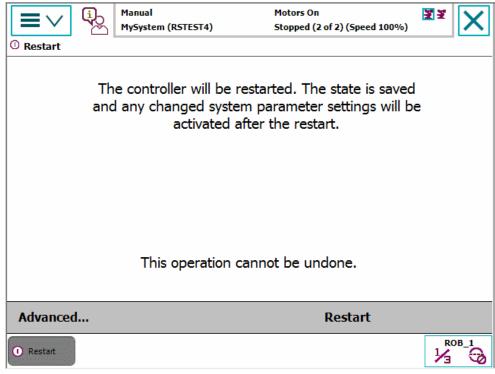
3.2.13 **Restart**

3.2.13 Restart

Restart

A running system normally does not need to be restarted.

Tap the ABB menu and then Restart to restart the system.



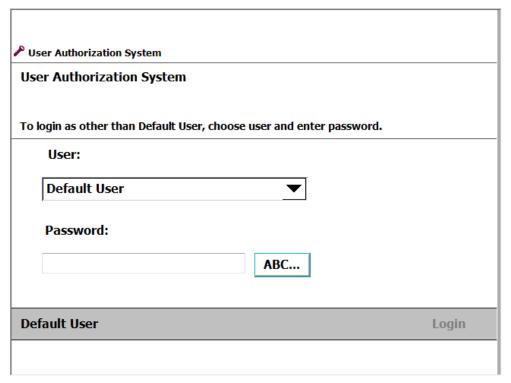
en0500001557

3.2.14 Log Off

The Log Off menu

This section details the **Log Off** menu. More about using this menu is described in *Logging on and off on page 98*.

Log Off is available under the ABB menu.



en0400000947

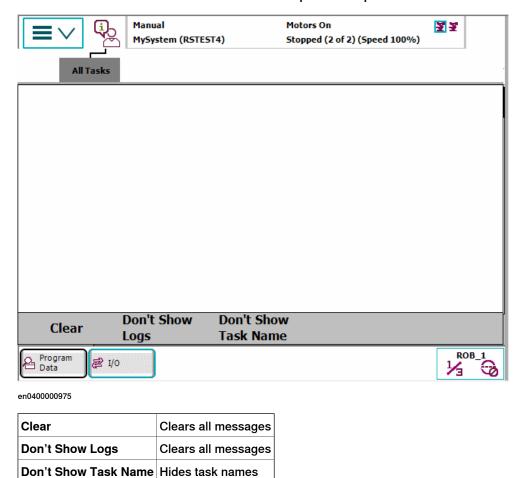
3.3 Operator window

3.3 Operator window

Operator window

The operator window displays messages from the program. With *Multitasking* installed, all tasks' messages are displayed in the same operator window. If a message requires action then a separate window for that task will be displayed.

The operator window is opened by tapping the icon to the right of the ABB logo in the status bar. The illustration shows an example of an operator window:

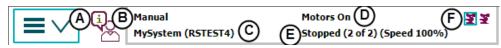


3.4 Status bar

3.4 Status bar

Illustration of status bar

The Status bar displays information about the current status, such as operational mode, system, and active mechanical unit.



| ≥ոՈ | いろい | ากก | 04 9 | n |
|-----|-----|-----|-------------|---|

| Α | Operator window |
|---|--|
| В | Operating mode |
| С | System name (and controller name) |
| D | Controller state |
| E | Program state |
| F | Mechanical units. The selected unit (and any unit coordinated with the selected) is marked with a border. Active units are displayed in color, while deactivated units are grey. |

3.5.1 The Quickset menu

3.5 Quickset

3.5.1 The Quickset menu

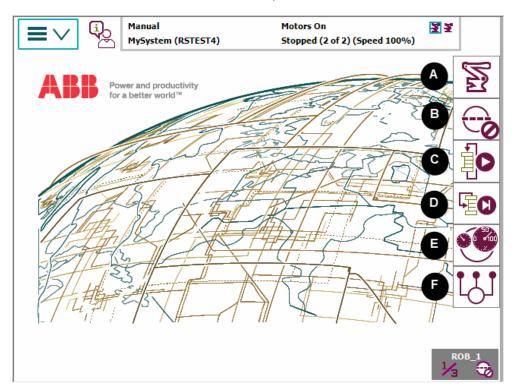
Quickset menu

The QuickSet menu provides a quicker way to change among other things jog properties rather than using the **Jogging**view.

Each button on the menu shows the currently selected property value or setting. In manual mode, the Quickset menu button shows the currently selected mechanical unit, motion mode, and increment size.

Illustration of the Quickset menu

This section describes the buttons in the Quickset menu.



en0300000471

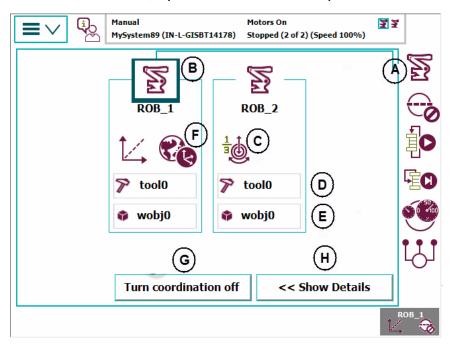
| Α | Mechanical unit, see <i>Quickset menu, Mechanical unit on page 79</i> . |
|---|---|
| В | Increment, see Quickset menu, Increment on page 84. |
| С | Run Mode, see <i>Quickset menu, Run Mode on page 85</i> . |
| D | Step Mode, see Quickset menu, Step Mode on page 86. |
| E | Speed, see Quickset menu, Speed on page 87. |
| F | Tasks, see Quickset menu, Tasks on page 88. |

3.5.2 Quickset menu, Mechanical unit

3.5.2 Quickset menu, Mechanical unit

Illustration Mechanical unit button

On the Quickset menu, tap Mechanical unit, then tap to select a mechanical unit.



en0300000539

| Α | Mechanical unit menu button |
|---|---|
| В | Mechanical unit, a selected unit is highlighted. See <i>Selecting mechanical unit for jogging on page 130</i> . |
| С | Motion mode settings (axes 1-3 motion mode currently selected), further settings are described in <i>Illustration Motion mode settings on page 80</i> . |
| D | Tool settings (tool 0 currently selected), further settings are described in <i>Illustration Tool settings on page 81</i> . |
| E | Work object settings (work object 0 currently selected), further settings are described in <i>Illustration Work object settings on page 81</i> . |
| F | Coordinate system settings (world coordinate currently selected), further settings are described in <i>Illustration Coordinate system settings on page 82</i> . |
| G | Turn coordination off, further settings are described in <i>Turn coordination off on page 83</i> . |
| Н | Show details, further settings are described in <i>Illustration Show Details on page 83</i> . |



Note

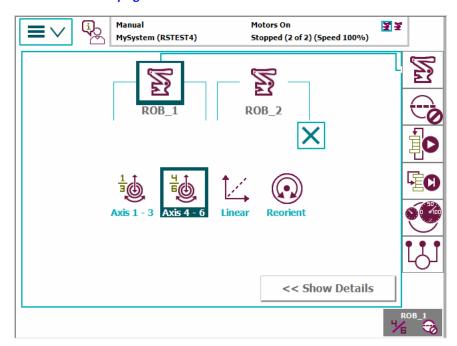
The Mechanical unit menu is only available in manual mode.

Continues on next page

3.5.2 Quickset menu, **Mechanical unit** *Continued*

Illustration Motion mode settings

To view or change any motion mode functionality, tap the **Motion mode** settings button. These settings are also available in the Jogging window, see *Selecting motion mode on page 132*.



en0300000540

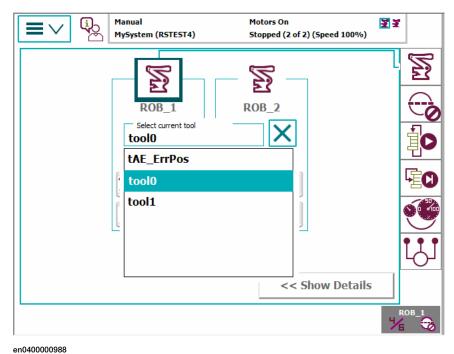
Select motion mode setting:

- Axis 1-3
- Axis 4-6
- Linear
- Reorient

3.5.2 Quickset menu, **Mechanical unit**Continued

Illustration Tool settings

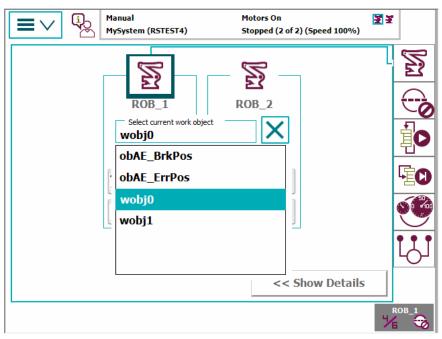
To view or change the available tools, tap the **Tool** settings button. These settings are also available in the Jogging window, see *Selecting tool, work object, and payload on page 133*.



en0400000988

Illustration Work object settings

To view or change the available work objects, tap the **Work object** settings button. These settings are also available in the Jogging window, see *Selecting tool, work object, and payload on page 133*.



en0400000989

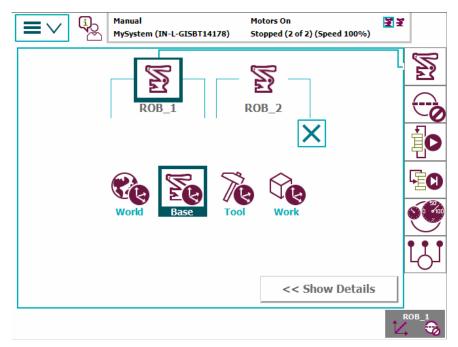
Continues on next page

3.5.2 Quickset menu, **Mechanical unit** *Continued*

Select a work object to use.

Illustration Coordinate system settings

To view or change coordinate system functionality, tap the **Coordinate system** settings button. These settings are also available in the Jogging window, see *Selecting coordinate system on page 136*.



en0300000541

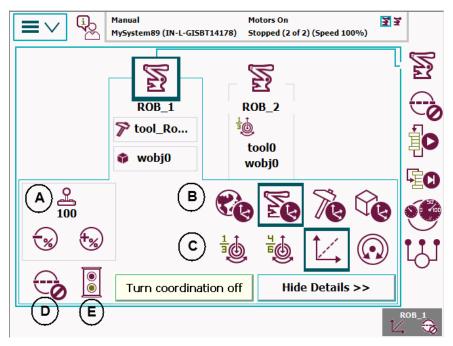
Select a coordinate system setting:

- · World coordinate system
- · Base coordinate system
- · Tool coordinate system
- · Work object coordinate system

3.5.2 Quickset menu, **Mechanical unit**Continued

Illustration Show Details

Tap Show Details to display the settings available for a mechanical unit.



en0500002354

| Α | Override jog speed settings (100% currently selected) |
|---|---|
| В | Coordinate system settings |
| С | Motion mode settings |
| D | Turn on or off user increment |
| E | Turn on or off jog supervision |

If any of the settings are not available, they will crossed over.

Motion mode and coordinate settings can be changed by tapping the buttons.

Tap Hide Details to return to the basic display.

Turn coordination off

To quickly change between coordinated and uncoordinated jogging, use the coordination off button.

The button is automatically hidden when you change anything that effects coordination, for example the work object or the coordinate system of the coordinated mechanical unit.

To re-enable the button you must setup coordination again manually.

For information about coordination between MultiMove robots, see *Application manual - MultiMove*.

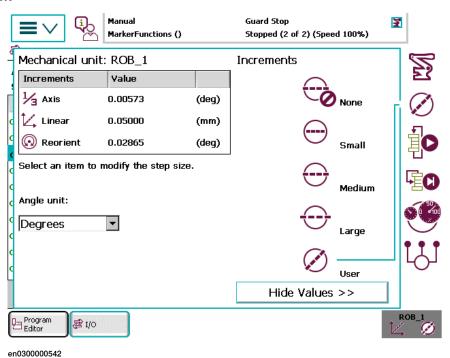
3.5.3 Quickset menu, Increment

3.5.3 Quickset menu, Increment

Increment settings

The increment settings are also available in the Jogging window. For more details, see *Incremental movement for precise positioning on page 139*.

Illustration Increment



| None | No increments |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| Small | Small movements |
| Medium | Medium movement |
| Large | Large movements |
| User | User defined movements |
| Show/Hide Values | Displays/hides increment values |
| Angle unit | Defines the unit for the angles. |



Note

The Increment menu is available only in manual mode.

3.5.4 Quickset menu, Run Mode

3.5.4 Quickset menu, Run Mode

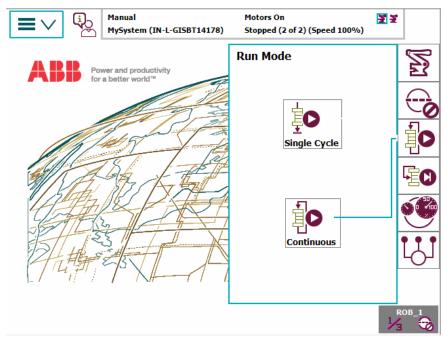
Run mode

By setting run mode you define if the program execution should run once and then stop, or run continuously.

For information about run mode in:

- Multitasking, see Application manual Controller software IRC5, section Multitasking.
- MultiMove, see Application manual MultiMove, section User interface specific for Multimove.

Illustration Run mode



en0300000472

| Single Cycle | Runs one cycle then stops execution. |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| Continuous | Runs continuously. |

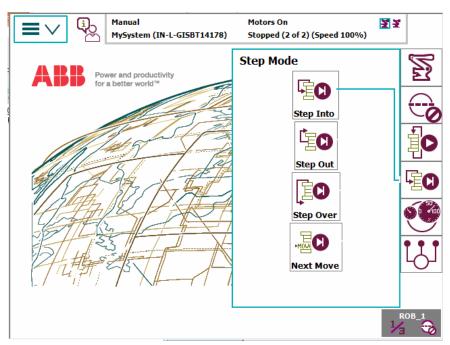
3.5.5 Quickset menu, Step Mode

3.5.5 Quickset menu, Step Mode

Step mode

By setting the step mode you can define how the step-by-step program execution should function. For more details, see *Stepping instruction by instruction on page 210*

Illustration Step mode



en0300000543

| Step Into | Steps into called routines and executes them step-by-step. |
|-----------|---|
| Step Out | Executes the remains of the current routine and then stops at the next instruction in the routine from which the current routine was called. Not possible to use in the Main routine. |
| Step Over | Called routines are executed in one single step. |
| Next Move | Steps to the next move instruction. Stops before and after movement instructions, for example, to modify positions. |



Note

If you select the Step Out/Step Over/Next Move step modes, an arrow icon

() is also displayed in the QuickSet menu indicating that the selected mode is not a Step Into step mode.

3.5.6 Quickset menu, Speed

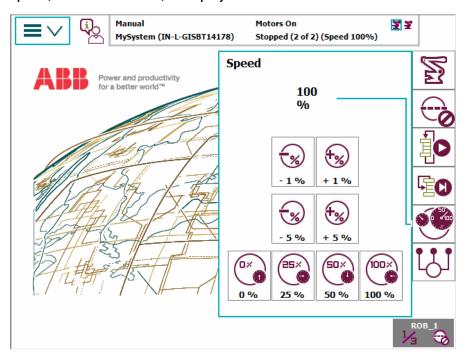
3.5.6 Quickset menu, Speed

Speed button

The speed settings apply to the current operating mode. However, if you decrease the speed in automatic mode, the setting also applies to manual mode if you change mode.

Illustration Speed

Tap the **Speed** button to view or change the speed settings. The current running speed, in relation to max, is displayed above the buttons.



en0300000470

| -1% | Decrease running speed in steps of 1% |
|------|---------------------------------------|
| +1% | Increase running speed in steps of 1% |
| -5% | Decrease running speed in steps of 5% |
| +5% | Increase running speed in steps of 5% |
| 0% | Set speed to 0% |
| 25% | Run at quarter speed (25%) |
| 50% | Run at half speed (50%) |
| 100% | Run at full speed (100%) |

3.5.7 Quickset menu, Tasks

3.5.7 Quickset menu, Tasks

Tasks button

If you have the option *Multitasking* installed there can be more than one task. Otherwise there is only one task.

By default, you can activate/deactivate only **Normal** tasks from the **Quickset** menu. However, from the **Control Panel**, you can change the settings so that **All tasks** can be activated/deactivated.

Activated tasks are started and stopped with the **Start** and **Stop** buttons on the FlexPendant.

The tasks settings are only valid for manual operating mode.

Related information

Application manual - Controller software IRC5, section Multitasking.

How to start and stop multitasking programs is described in section Using multitasking programs on page 241.

TrustLevel for tasks are set with system parameters, see section *Task* in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

You can define if all tasks or only normal tasks should be displayed. See section Defining which tasks should be selectable in the tasks panel on page 107.

3.6.1 Using the soft keyboard

3.6 Basic procedures

3.6.1 Using the soft keyboard

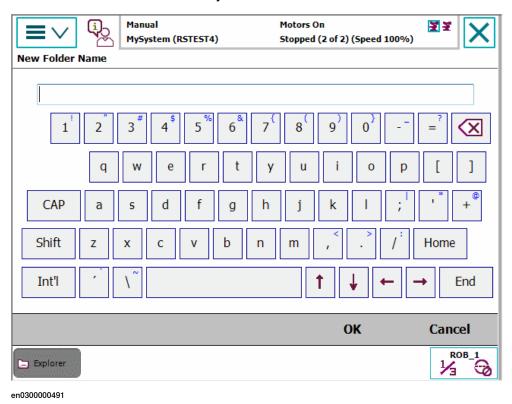
Soft keyboard

The soft keyboard is used frequently when operating the system, for example when entering file names or parameter values.

The soft keyboard works as an ordinary keyboard with which you can place the insertion point, type and correct typing errors. Tap letters, numbers and special characters to enter your text or values.

Illustration soft keyboard

This illustration shows the soft keyboard on the FlexPendant.



Using international characters

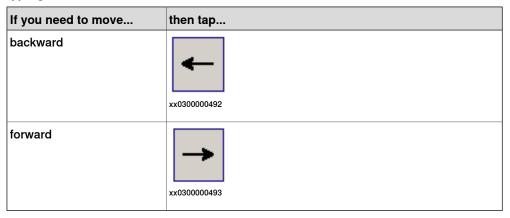
All western characters can be used, also in usernames and passwords. To access international characters, tap the Int'l button on the soft keyboard.

Continues on next page

3.6.1 Using the soft keyboard *Continued*

Changing the insertion point

Tap the arrow keys to change the insertion point, for instance when correcting typing errors.



Deleting

1 Tap the **Backspace** key (top right) to delete characters to the left of the insertion point.



xx0300000494

3.6.2 Messages on the FlexPendant

3.6.2 Messages on the FlexPendant

Overview of messages

The FlexPendant displays messages from the system. These can be status messages, error messages, program messages, or requests for action from the user. Some require actions, and some are plain information.

Event log messages

The event log messages are messages from the RobotWare system about system status, events, or errors.

How to work with the event log messages is described in section *Handling the* event log on page 277. All messages are also described in *Operating* manual - Trouble shooting IRC5.

System messages

Some messages sent out by the system are not from the event log. They can come from other applications, such as RobotStudio.

To be able to change configurations and settings in the system from RobotStudio, the user must request write access. This generates a message on the FlexPendant where the operator can grant or deny access. The operator can at any time decide to withdraw the write access.

How to request access and work with RobotStudio is described in *Operating manual - RobotStudio*.

Program messages

RAPID programs can send out messages to the Operator window, see section *Operator window on page 76*.

How to generate program messages is described in *Technical reference* manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types.

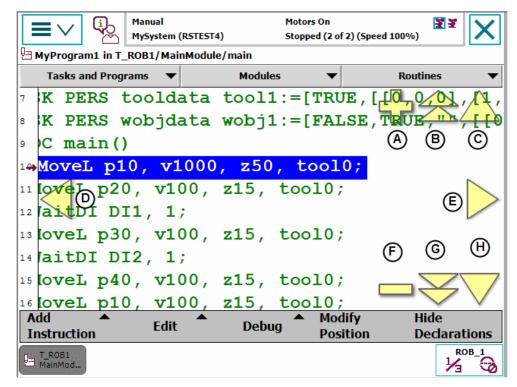
3.6.3 Scrolling and zooming

3.6.3 Scrolling and zooming

Overview

The entire contents of a screen might not be visible at the same time. To see the entire contents, you can:

- Scroll up/down (and sometimes left/right)
- Zoom in or out (only available in the Program Editor)



en0400000685

| Α | Zoom in (larger text) |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| В | Scroll up (the height of one page) |
| С | Scroll up (the height of one line) |
| D | Scroll left |
| E | Scroll right |
| F | Zoom out (smaller text) |
| G | Scroll down (the height of one page) |
| Н | Scroll down (the height of one line) |

3.6.4 Filtering data

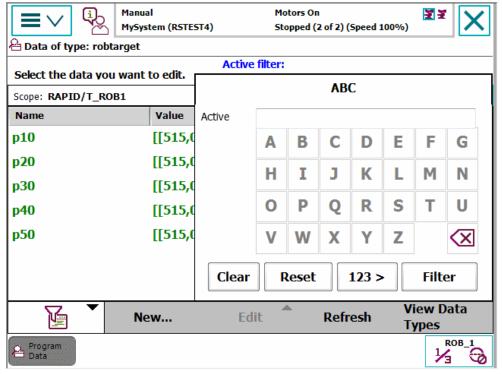
Filtering data

In several of the FlexPendant menus you can use filtering. This can be useful when you are looking at instances of a data type, for example, and there are more available than is possible to overlook. By filtering instances starting with a specific character for example, the number can be greatly reduced.

Depending on the type of data, you can filter data either alphabetically or numerically.

Illustration of filtering

The filter function is switched on until the active filter is removed (For example, by tapping Reset).



en0500001539



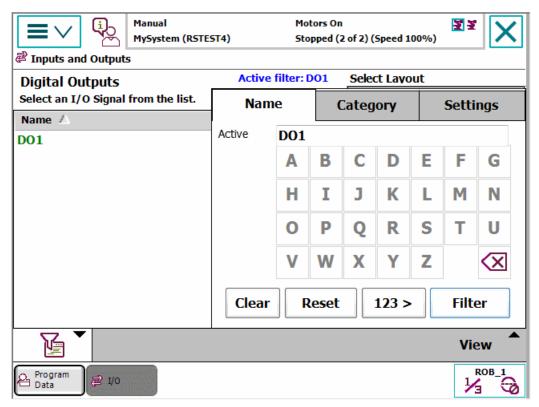
Note

When filtering I/O signals there are more options than for many other types of data. For example,

- you can filter data by Name or Category.
- filtering function can be displayed automatically if the number of signals displayed exceeds a predefined number. See *Illustration of automatic filter* display on page 95.

Continues on next page

3.6.4 Filtering data Continued



en1200000669

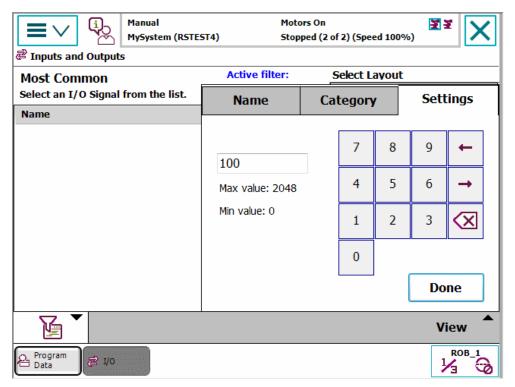
Figure 3.1:

| en1100000506 | Opens and closes the Active filter menu. |
|---------------|---|
| Filter | Applies the filter. |
| 123 / ABC | Depending on type of data, there may be one or several ways to filter data, e.g. numeric, alphabetic. |
| Reset | Removes the filter string. |
| Clear | Clears the text within the Active filter text box. |
| Active filter | Displays the current filter. It is also displayed at the top of the list of items. |

3.6.4 Filtering data Continued

Illustration of automatic filter display

The I/O signal filter can be set to be displayed automatically if the number of data exceeds a predefined number.



en0600002643

| | Action | |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | Tap Change to edit the setting controlling when the filter dialog should appear. | |
| 2. | Enter a new number defining the upper limit for not using the filter. Then tap Done. | |
| 3. | Tap Virtuals to select if all, or only virtual, or only non virtual signals should be listed. | |

3.6.5 Process applications

3.6.5 Process applications

Process applications

Custom process applications are started from the ABB menu. Each application is listed as a menu item together with the FlexPendant views.

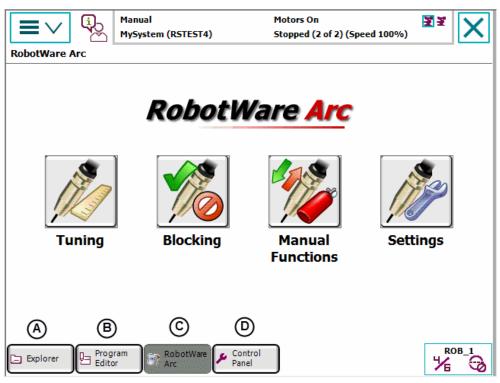
Start a process application

Use this procedure to start a process application.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | Tap the ABB button to display the ABB menu. Process applications are listed in the menu. |
| 2 | Tap the name of the process application to start. |

Switch between started process applications

A started application has a quick-button in the taskbar, just like FlexPendant views. Tap the buttons to switch between the started applications and views.



en0400000768

The views and process application running in this case are:

| Α | FlexPendant Explorer view |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| В | Program Editor view |
| С | RobotWare Arc, a process application |
| D | Control Panel view |

3.6.6 Granting access for RobotStudio

3.6.6 Granting access for RobotStudio

About write access on the controller

The controller accepts *only* one user with write access at a time. Users in RobotStudio can request write access to the system. If the system is running in manual mode, the request is accepted or rejected on the FlexPendant.

Granting access for RobotStudio

This procedure describes how to grant access for RobotStudio.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | When a user in RobotStudio requests access, a message is displayed on the FlexPendant. Decide whether to grant or reject access. If you want to grant access, then tap Grant . The user holds write access until he disconnects or until you reject the access. If you want to deny access, then tap Deny . |
| 2 | If you have granted access and want to revoke the access, tap Deny. |



Note

For a system connected to T10, users in RobotStudio can request write access by pressing the enabling device twice and logging in as a local client.

3.6.7 Logging on and off

3.6.7 Logging on and off

Logout procedure

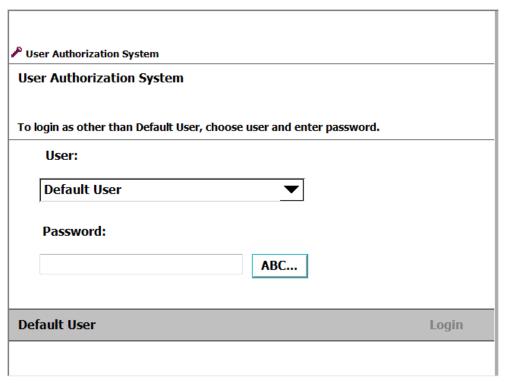
Use this procedure to log off the system.

| | Action |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Log Off. |
| 2 | Tap Yesto confirm. |

Login procedure

Use this procedure to log on to the controller, using the User Authorization System, UAS. UAS can limit the available functions for users.

After a log off, the Login window is displayed automatically.



en0400000947

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Tap on the User menu and select a user. If there are more than seven users then the menu is replaced with a button. | If you select Default User , then no password is required, and you are logged on automatically. |
| 2 | If the user you have chosen has a password you must use the soft keyboard to enter password. Tap ABC to display the soft keyboard. Enter the password and tap OK. | |
| 3 | TapLogin. | |

Continues on next page

3.6.7 Logging on and off *Continued*

Handling users and authorization levels

Read more on how to add users or set the authorization in *Operating manual - RobotStudio*.

How to edit what views or functions are hidden for certain users is described in *Defining a view to be shown during operating mode change or startup on page 101*.

3.7.1.1 Setting default paths

3.7 Changing FlexPendant settings

3.7.1 System settings

3.7.1.1 Setting default paths

Introduction to default paths

You can set individual default paths for some actions using the FlexPendant.

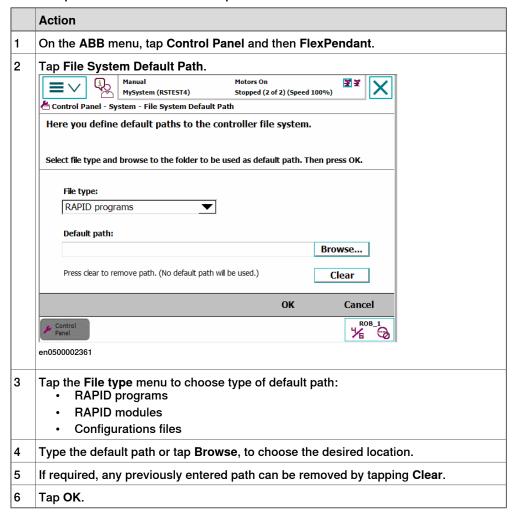
The following default paths can be set:

- · Saving and loading RAPID programs.
- Saving and loading RAPID modules.
- · Saving and storing configuration files.

This function is available if the user that is logged on is authorized. User authorization is handled via RobotStudio. See *Operating manual - RobotStudio*.

Setting default paths

Use this procedure to set a default path.



3.7.1.2 Defining a view to be shown during operating mode change or startup

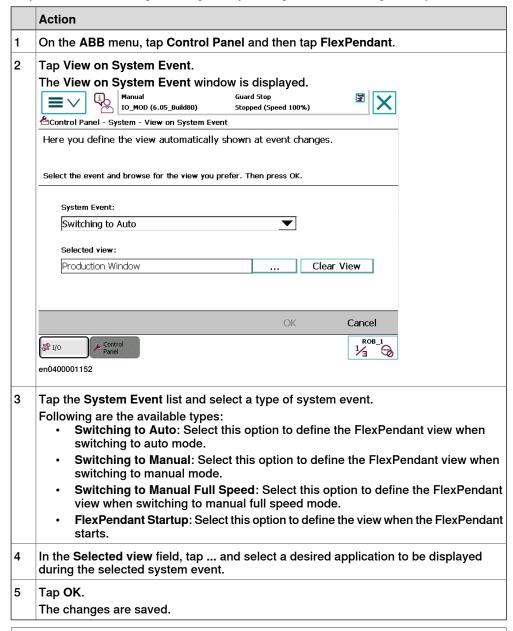
3.7.1.2 Defining a view to be shown during operating mode change or startup

View on operating mode change or startup

This function can be used, for example, if a view other than the **Production Window** is desired when switching to Auto mode.

Defining view on operating mode change

Use the following procedure to configure the FlexPendant to automatically show a specified view during a change in operating mode or during startup.





Note

The Clear View button will remove the currently selected view if you do not want any view to be automatically shown.

3.7.1.3 Changing the background image

3.7.1.3 Changing the background image

Background images

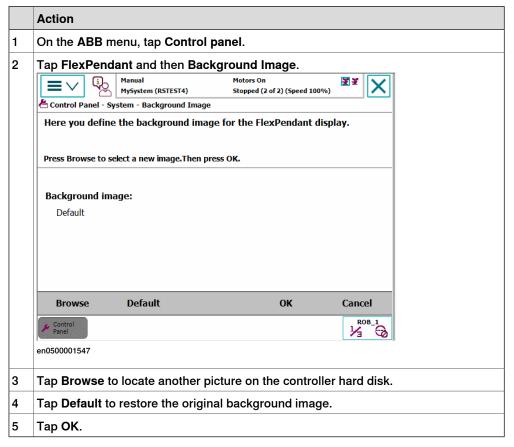
The background image on the FlexPendant can be changed. Any image file on the controller hard disk can be used, a photo as well as an illustration.

For best result, use an image following these recommendations:

- 640 by 390 pixels (width, height)
- Format gif

Changing background image

Use this procedure to change background image on FlexPendant.



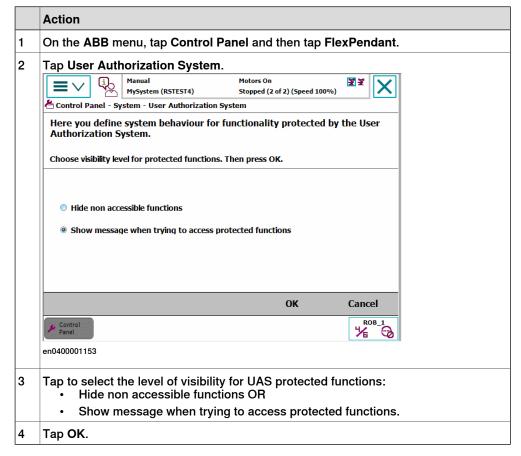
3.7.1.4 Defining visibility level for UAS protected functions

3.7.1.4 Defining visibility level for UAS protected functions

Introduction to visibility levels

This section describes how to define visibility level for functions protected by the user authorization system, UAS. The protected functions can be hidden or displayed but not accessible. All other administration of the user authorization system is done using RobotStudio. See *Operating manual - RobotStudio*.

Defining visibility level for UAS protected functions



3.7.1.5 Defining an additional test view

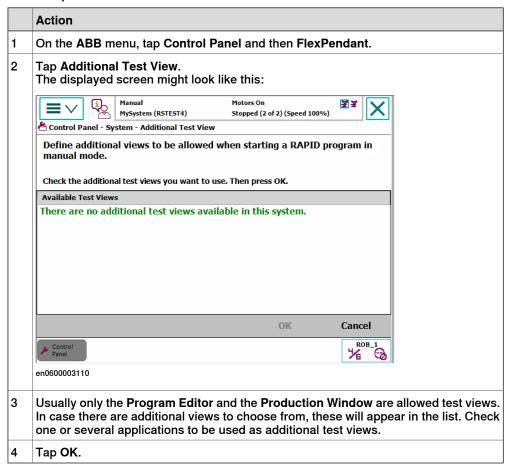
3.7.1.5 Defining an additional test view

Overview

If your system has a customized operator interface, that is one or several applications developed with FlexPendant SDK, it is possible to enable the user to start program execution in manual mode from such an application. If there is no such application, however, the screen for adding other test views will look as in the illustration below.

Defining an additional test view

Use this procedure to define an additional test view.



3.7.1.6 Defining position programming rule

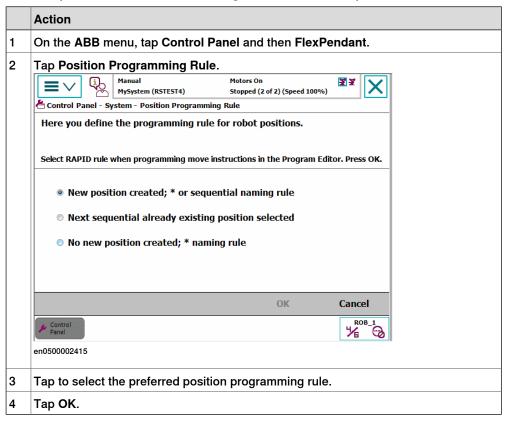
3.7.1.6 Defining position programming rule

Introduction to position naming

Robot positions in a RAPID program are either named variables or not named (using the asterisk character, *). The programmer can choose which naming rule the FlexPendant should use when new move instructions are programmed.

Defining position programming rule

Use this procedure to define a naming rule for new robot positions.



Position programming rules

This section gives a detailed description of the options available when programming robot positions, here referred to as *targets*. This signifies the position to which the mechanical unit is programmed to move.

New targets can be named according to any of these principles:

- · New position created; * or sequential naming rule.
- Next sequential already existing position selected.
- · No new position created; * naming rule.

New position created; * or sequential naming rule

This is the default setting. When a move instruction is programmed, a new target will automatically be created. If the last target was named, that is *not* using an "*", the new target will be named in sequence with the previous one.

Continues on next page

3.7.1.6 Defining position programming rule *Continued*

For example: MoveJ p10 will be followed by MoveJ p20, unless this target already exists in the program. In such a case, MoveJ p30 (or the next free number) will be used instead.

Next sequential already existing position selected

When a move instruction is programmed, no new target will be created. Instead, the next target in a sequence created beforehand will be selected. The very first target, however, will be an "*", as no sequence yet exists. As soon as the first target has been defined this rule will be applied.

For example: A number of targets have been predefined; p10 to p50. In such a case, MoveJ p10 will be followed by MoveJ p20. The next instruction will use target p30, etc. until p50 is reached. Since no further targets have been defined, p50 will be used for the following targets as well.

No new position created; * naming rule

When a Move instruction is programmed, no new target will be created. Instead, an "*" will always be used. This can be replaced by an existing target at a later stage.

For example: MoveJ p10 will be followed by MoveJ *.

3.7.1.7 Defining which tasks should be selectable in the tasks panel

3.7.1.7 Defining which tasks should be selectable in the tasks panel

Tasks panel

The tasks panel is found in the Quickset menu. See *Quickset menu*, *Tasks on page 88*.



Tip

To simplify debugging of background tasks you can make all tasks (including the background tasks) visible in the task panel on the FlexPendant. Then, in manual mode, all tasks that are selected in the task panel (including background tasks) will stop when pressing the stop button.

Defining which tasks to show

Use this procedure to define which tasks should be selectable in the tasks panel in the Quickset menu.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Control Panel and then tap FlexPendant. |
| 2 | Tap Task Panel Settings. |
| 3 | Select Only Normal tasks or All tasks. When All tasks is selected, then all tasks that are selected in the task panel (including background tasks) will stop when pressing the stop button. The selected background tasks will be treated as if the value of the system parameter <i>Trustlevel</i> is defined as <i>NoSafety</i> . |
| 4 | Тар ОК. |

3.7.1.8 Managing the display of controller and system name

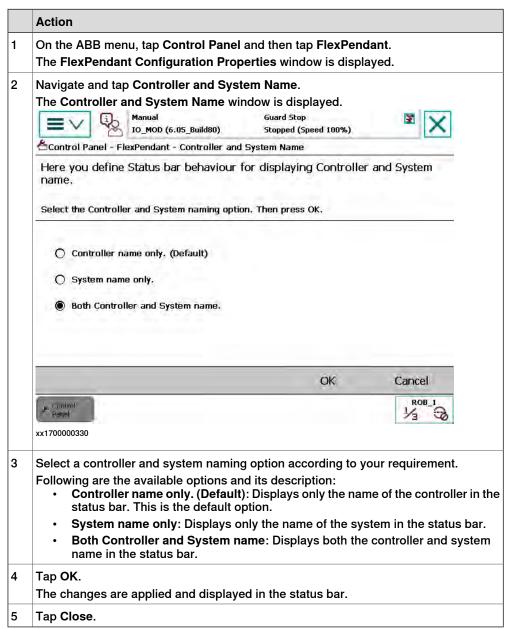
3.7.1.8 Managing the display of controller and system name

Overview

You can manage the display of controller and system name using this feature.

Controller and System name

Use the following procedure to manage the display of controller and system name in the status bar.



3.7.2.1 Changing brightness and contrast

3.7.2 Basic settings

3.7.2.1 Changing brightness and contrast

Appearance options

This section describes the **Appearance** menu, where you can adjust the screen's brightness and contrast. The contrast can only be adjusted on FlexPendant without USB port.

Changing brightness and contrast

Use this procedure to change brightness and contrast of the screen.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Control Panel. |
| 2 | Tap Appearance. |
| 3 | Tap the Plus or Minus button to adjust the levels. Tap Set Default to return to default. The brightness and contrast changes as you change the levels which gives you an instant view of how the new levels will affect the visibility. |
| 4 | Tap OK to use the new brightness and contrast levels. |



Note

If you change brightness or contrast from the default levels, some screens can appear to be striped. This is however not a sign of a faulty screen. Change back to default settings to avoid the striped appearance.

3.7.2.2 Adapting the FlexPendant for left-handed users

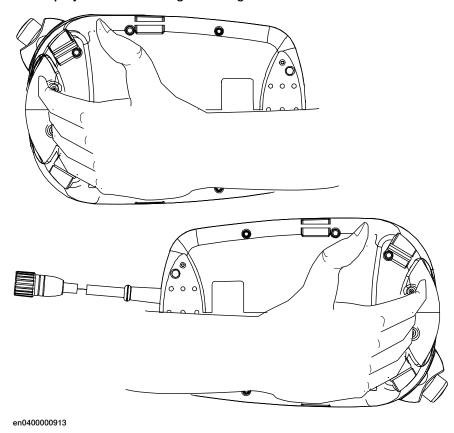
3.7.2.2 Adapting the FlexPendant for left-handed users

Overview

The device is usually operated while being supported by the left hand. A left-hander, however, normally prefers to use his left hand for using the touch screen. however, can easily rotate the display through 180 degrees and use his right hand to support the device. The FlexPendant is set to suit right-handers on delivery, but can easily be adapted to suit the needs of the left-handed.

Illustration

The FlexPendant operated by a right-handed person at the top and by a left-handed person at the bottom. Especially note the location of the emergency button when the display is rotated through 180 degrees.

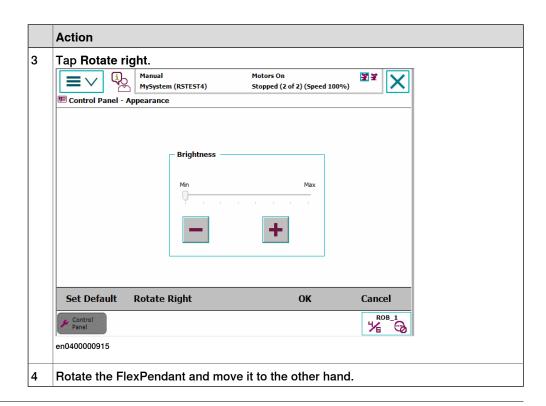


Rotating the FlexPendant screen

Use this procedure to adapt the FlexPendant to suit a left-handed user.

| | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | | Tap the ABB menu, then tap Control Panel. |
| 2 | 2 | Tap Appearance. |

3.7.2.2 Adapting the FlexPendant for left-handed users Continued



What is affected?

The following settings are affected when adapting the FlexPendant for a left- handed user.

| Setting | Effect | Information |
|--|--|---|
| Jogging directions | The joystick directions are adjusted automatically. | The illustrations of jogging directions in the jogging menu are adjusted automatically. |
| Hardware buttons and programmable keys | Start, Stop, Forward, and Backward buttons do not change place with programmable keys. | See buttons A-G in the illustration <i>Hard buttons on page 39</i> . |
| Emergency stop | No effect. | Differently located, at the bottom instead of at the top. |
| Three-position enabling device | No effect | |

3.7.2.3 Changing date and time

3.7.2.3 Changing date and time

Changing date and time

Use the following procedure to configure date and time.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Control Panel. |
| 2 | Tap Date and Time. The Control Panel - Date and Time window is displayed. |
| 3 | In the Settings section, select Network Time or Manual Time. Select Network Time for configuring the robot controller for automatic time synchronization using NTP protocol of a time server. The time server is identified by its IP address or DNS name. Select Manual Time if you do not have a time server that is reachable from the controller. |
| 4 | Select the required time zone from the Time Zone section. |
| 5 | In the Date and Time section, tap the + (Plus) or - (Minus) button and configure the date and time. |
| 6 | Tap OK. The selected settings are saved. |



Note

The date and time are displayed according to the ISO standard. That is, date is in the year-month-day format and time is in the hour:minute format (24-hour format).

3.7.2.4 Configuring Most Common I/O

3.7.2.4 Configuring Most Common I/O

Most Common I/O

Most Common I/O is used in the **Program Editor** to display a list of the most commonly used I/O signals in the robot system. Since there can be many signals, it can be helpful to use this selection.

The sorting in the list can be rearranged manually. By default, the signals are sorted in the order that they are created.

Most Common I/O can also be configured using system parameters in the topic *Man-machine Communication*. However, sorting the list can only be done by using the function under the Control Panel.

Configuring Most Common I/O

Use this procedure to configure the list Most Common I/O.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Control Panel. |
| 2 | Tap I/O. A list of all I/O signals defined in the system is listed with check boxes. |
| 3 | Tap the names of the signals to select for the Most Common I/O list. Tap All or None to select all or no signals. Tap Name or Type to sort by name or signal type. |
| 4 | Tap Preview to see the list of selected signals and adjust the sort order. Tap to select a signal and then tap the arrows to move the signal up or down in the list, rearranging the sort order. Tap APPLY to save the sort order. Tap Edit to return to the list of all signals. |
| 5 | Tap APPLY to save the settings. |

3.7.2.5 Changing language

3.7.2.5 Changing language

Languages

The FlexPendant is installed with and supports twenty different languages. By default, the current language is English.

Switching from one installed languages to another is easy. For more information, see *Changing language on page 114*.



Note

When you switch to another language, all buttons, menus and dialogs will use the new language. RAPID instructions, variables, system parameters, and I/O signals are not affected.

Changing language

Use this procedure to change language on the FlexPendant.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Control Panel. |
| 2 | Tap Language. A list of all installed languages is displayed. |
| 3 | Tap the language that you want to change to. |
| 4 | Tap OK. A dialog box is displayed. Tap Yes to proceed and restart the FlexPendant. The current language is replaced by the selected one. |

3.7.2.6 Changing programmable keys

3.7.2.6 Changing programmable keys

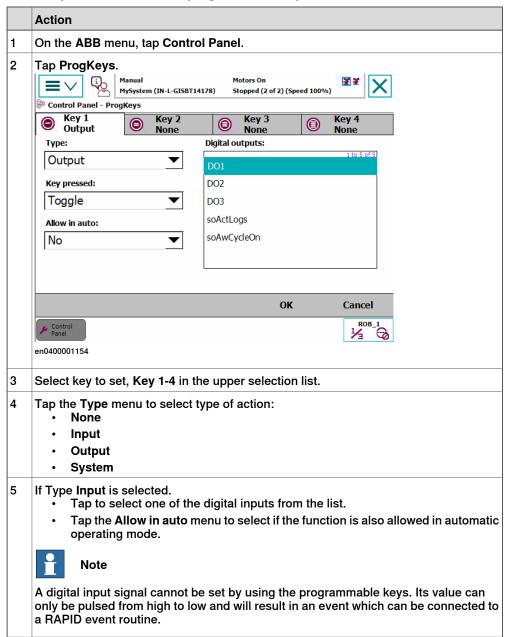
Overview

Programmable keys are four hardware buttons on the FlexPendant that can be used for dedicated, specific functions set by the user. See *Hard buttons on page 39*.

The keys can be programmed to simplify programming or testing of programs. They can also be used to activate menus on the FlexPendant.

Change programmable keys

Use this procedure to set the programmable keys.



3.7.2.6 Changing programmable keys *Continued*

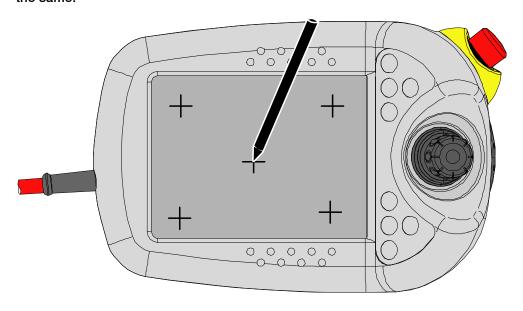
| | Action | |
|---|---|--|
| 6 | If Type Output is selected. • Tap to select one of the digital outputs from the list | |
| | Tap the Key pressed menu to define how the signal should behave when the key is pressed. | |
| | Tap the Allow in auto menu to select if the function is also allowed in automatic operating mode | |
| | Key pressed functions: • Toggle - switches signal value from 0 to 1 or vice versa | |
| | Set to 1 - sets the signal to 1 Set to 0 - sets the signal to 0 | |
| | Press/Release - sets signal value to 1 while key is pressed (note that an inverted signal will be set to 0) | |
| | Pulse - the signal value pulses once | |
| 7 | If Type System is selected. Tap the Key pressed menu to select Move PP to main | |
| | Tap the Allow in auto menu to select if the function is also allowed in automatic operating mode | |
| 8 | Set the other keys as described in steps 3 to 7 above. | |
| 9 | Tap OK to save the settings. | |

3.7.2.7 Calibrating the touch screen

3.7.2.7 Calibrating the touch screen

Recalibration

This section describes how to recalibrate the touch screen. The touch screen is calibrated on delivery and normally never needs to be recalibrated. Depending on FlexPendant model, the appearance of the symbols will vary, the function is however the same



en0400000974

Calibrating the touch screen

Use this procedure to calibrate the touch screen.

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Control Panel. | |
| 2 | Tap Touch Screen. | |
| 3 | Tap Recalibrate. The screen will go blank for a few seconds. A series of symbols will appear on the screen, one at a time. | |
| 4 | Tap the center of each symbol with a pointed object. | ! CAUTION Do not use a sharp object which can damage the surface of the screen. |
| 5 | The recalibration is complete. | |

About the touch calibration function

The touch calibration function waits on each calibration point for a couple of touch coordinates or that the touch will be released. Then the average of the collected coordinates will be calculated and the symbol moves to the next position.

3 Navigating and handling FlexPendant

3.7.2.7 Calibrating the touch screen *Continued*

The touch controller only sends new coordinates to the CPU when the coordinates are changing. If you touch the symbol very accurately with a stylus, the touch coordinates will not change. Then the touch controller sends only one coordinate and the touch calibration function is waiting endlessly for more coordinates.

The best way to avoid this problem is to tap the symbol for only one second and then release.

4 Jogging

4.1 Introduction to jogging

What is jogging?

To jog is to manually position or move robots or external axes.

When can I jog?

You can jog in manual mode but you cannot jog during program execution.

Jogging the robot

This procedure details the main steps for jogging the robot.

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | It is possible to jog the robot under the following conditions: • The system has been started as detailed in this manual. • No programmed operation is running • The system is in Manual mode. • The three-position enabling device is pressed and the system is in Motors On state. | The Manual mode is described in section About the manual mode on page 205. Starting in the Manual mode is detailed in section Starting programs on page 237. How to switch to manual mode is detailed in section Switching from automatic to manual mode on page 257. |
| 2 | Determine in which way you want to jog. | The difference between different types of jogging is detailed in section <i>Introduction to jogging on page 119</i> . How to select coordinate system is detailed in section <i>Selecting coordinate system on page 136</i> . |
| 3 | Select a mechanical unit. The axes can be jogged in different ways. | How to jog the robot axis by axis is detailed in section <i>Jog axis by axis on page 135</i> . |
| 4 | Define the working range for the robot/robots as well as for any other pieces of equipment working in the robot cell. | The robot's working range is defined by system parameters. See <i>Technical reference manual - System parameters</i> . |
| 5 | Jog the manipulator using the joystick on the FlexPendant. | The FlexPendant and its various parts and sections are described in section <i>What is a FlexPendant? on page 37</i> . The joystick and how to map the directions of it, is detailed in section <i>Selecting motion mode on page 132</i> . |
| | | How to prevent causing manipulator movements in certain directions while jogging, is detailed in section <i>Locking the joystick in specific directions on page 137</i> . There might be restrictions to how you can jog, see section <i>Restrictions to jogging on</i> |
| 6 | In some cases, more than one manipulator | page 128. How to jog multiple manipulators is de- |
| 6 | In some cases, more than one manipulator can be jogged simultaneously. This requires the option <i>MultiMove</i> . | |

4.1 Introduction to jogging Continued

About motion modes and robots

The selected motion mode and/or coordinate system determines the way the robot moves.

In linear motion mode the tool center point moves along straight lines in space, in a "move from point A to point B" fashion. The tool center point moves in the direction of the selected coordinate system's axes.

Axis-by-axis mode moves one robot axis at a time. It is then hard to predict how the tool center point moves.

About motion modes and additional axes

Additional axes can only be jogged axis-by-axis. An additional axis can either be designed for some kind of linear motion or for rotational (angular) motion. Linear motion is used in conveyers, rotational motion in many kinds of workpiece handlers.

Additional axes are not affected by the selected coordinate system.

About coordinate systems

Positioning a pin in a hole with a gripper tool can be performed very easily in the tool coordinate system, if one of the coordinates in that system is parallel to the hole. Performing the same task in the base coordinate system may require jogging in both x, y, and z coordinates, making precision much more difficult.

To select the proper coordinate systems to jog in will make jogging easier but there are no simple or single answers to which coordinate system to choose.

A certain coordinate system will make it possible to move the tool center point to the target position with fewer joystick moves than another.

Conditions such as space limitations, obstacles or the physical size of a work object or tool will also guide you to the proper judgement.

Read more about coordinate systems in section *Coordinate systems for jogging on page 121*.

4.2 Coordinate systems for jogging

Coordinate systems

A coordinate system defines a plane or space by axes from a fixed point called the origin. Robot targets and positions are located by measurements along the axes of coordinate systems.

A robot uses several coordinate systems, each suitable for specific types of jogging or programming.

- The base coordinate system is located at the base of the robot. It is the easiest one for just moving the robot from one position to another.
- The work object coordinate system is related to the work piece and is often the best one for programming the robot.
- The *tool coordinate system* defines the position of the tool the robot uses when reaching the programmed targets.
- The world coordinate system that defines the robot cell, all other coordinate systems are related to the world coordinate system, either directly or indirectly. It is useful for jogging, general movements and for handling stations and cells with several robots or robots moved by external axes.
- The user coordinate system is useful for representing equipment that holds other coordinate systems, like work objects.

Default settings

If you change coordinate system in the jogging properties, this will automatically be reset to default settings after a restart.

Linear mode

For each mechanical unit the system will by default use the base coordinate system for the linear motion mode.

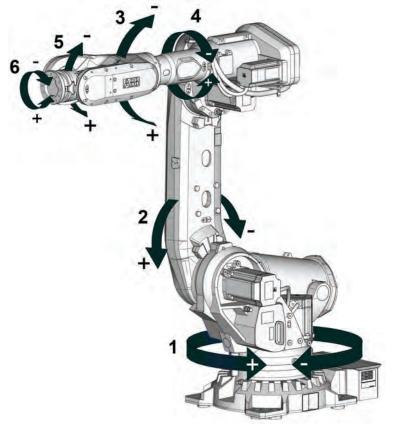
Reorient mode

For each mechanical unit the system will by default use the tool coordinate system for the reorientation motion mode.

Illustration of axes and joystick directions

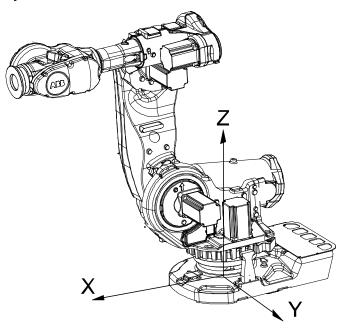
The axes of a generic six axis manipulator can be jogged manually using the joystick. Please check your plant or cell documentation to determine the physical orientation of any additional axes.

The illustration shows the movement patterns for each manipulator axis.



xx0300000520

The base coordinate system

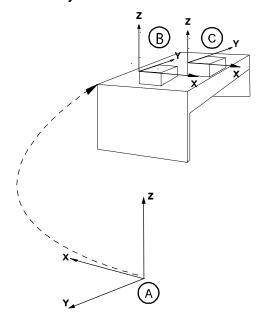


xx0300000495

The base coordinate system has its zero point in the base of the robot, which makes movements predictable for fixed mounted robots. It is therefore useful for jogging a robot from one position to another. For programming a robot, other coordinate systems, like the work object coordinate system are often better choices. See *The work object coordinate system on page 124* for more information.

When you are standing in front of the robot and jog in the base coordinate system, in a normally configured robot system, pulling the joystick towards you will move the robot along the X axis, while moving the joystick to the sides will move the robot along the Y axis. Twisting the joystick will move the robot along the Z axis.

The work object coordinate system



xx0600002738

| Α | World coordinate system |
|---|---------------------------------|
| В | Work Object coordinate system 1 |
| С | Work Object coordinate system 2 |

The work object coordinate system corresponds to the work piece: It defines the placement of the work piece in relation to the world coordinate system (or any other coordinate system).

The work object coordinate system must be defined in two frames, the user frame (related to the world frame) and the object frame (related to the user frame).

A robot can have several work object coordinate systems, either for representing different work pieces or several copies of the same work piece at different locations.

It is in work object coordinate systems you create targets and paths when programming the robot. This gives a lot of advantages:

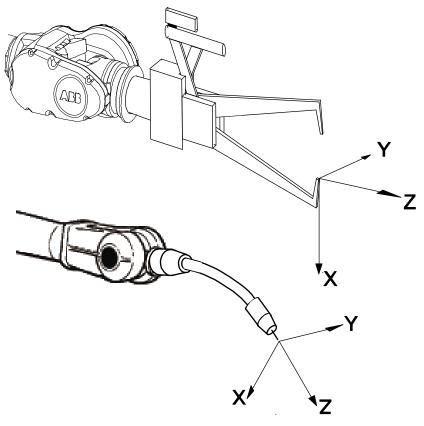
- When repositioning the work piece in the station you just change the position of the work object coordinate system and all paths are updated at once.
- Enables work on work pieces moved by external axes or conveyor tracks, since the entire work object with its paths can be moved.

Examples of use

For example, you are determining the positions of a number of holes to be drilled along the edge of the work object.

You are creating a weld between two walls in a box.

The tool coordinate system



en0300000497

The tool coordinate system has its zero position at the center point of the tool. It thereby defines the position and orientation of the tool. The tool coordinate system is often abbreviated TCPF (Tool Center Point Frame) and the center of the tool coordinate system is abbreviated TCP (Tool Center Point).

It is the TCP the robot moves to the programmed positions, when executing programs. This means that if you change the tool (and the tool coordinate system) the robot's movements will be changed so that the new TCP will reach the target.

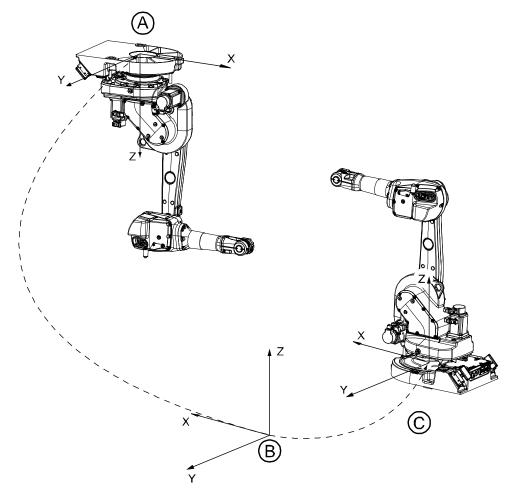
All robots have a predefined tool coordinate system, called tool0, located at the wrist of the robot. One or many new tool coordinate systems can then defined as offsets from tool0.

When jogging a robot the tool coordinate system is useful when you don't want to change the orientation of the tool during the movement, for instance moving a saw blade without bending it.

Examples of use

Use the tool coordinate system when you need to program or adjust operations for threading, drilling, milling or sawing.

The world coordinate system



en0300000496

| Α | Base coordinate system for robot 1 |
|---|------------------------------------|
| В | World coordinate |
| С | Base coordinate system for robot 2 |

The world coordinate system has its zero point on a fixed position in the cell or station. This makes it useful for handling several robots or robots moved by external axes.

By default the world coordinate system coincides with the base coordinate system.

Examples of use

For example, you have two robots, one floor mounted and one inverted. The base coordinate system for the inverted robot would be upside down.

If you jog in the base coordinate system for the inverted robot, movements will be very difficult to predict. Choose the shared world coordinate system instead.

4.3 Joystick directions

4.3 Joystick directions

Introduction to joystick directions

The **Joystick Directions** area shows how joystick axes correspond to the selected coordinate system's axes.



CAUTION

The Directions properties is not intended to show the direction in which the mechanical unit will move. Always try jogging with small joystick movements so that you learn the true directions of the mechanical unit.

Joystick directions

The significance of the joystick directions depends on the selected motion mode.

| Motion mode | Illustration joystick | Description |
|--|-----------------------|---|
| Linear | Joystick directions | Linear mode is described in section Setting the tool orientation on page 134. |
| Axis 1, 2, and 3 (default for robots) | Joystick directions | Axis 1-3 mode is described in section <i>Jog axis by axis on page 135</i> . |
| Axis 4, 5, and 6 | Joystick directions | Axis 4-6 mode is described in section <i>Jog axis by axis on page 135</i> . |
| Reorient | Joystick directions | Reorient mode is described in section Setting the tool orientation on page 134. |

4.4 Restrictions to jogging

4.4 Restrictions to jogging

Jog additional axes

Additional axes can only be jogged axis-by-axis. Please see *Application* manual - Additional axes and stand alone controller.

Jog mechanical units that are not calibrated

If the mechanical unit is not calibrated the text **Unit not calibrated** will be displayed in the **Position** area of the **Jogging** window.

An uncalibrated mechanical unit can only be jogged axis-by-axis. Its working range will not be checked.

When the robot is not calibrated, incremental movement is restricted to one step per joystick deflection. A calibrated robot performs 10 steps/sec when deflecting the joystick.



CAUTION

Mechanical units whose working range is not controlled by the robot system can be moved to dangerous positions. Mechanical stops should be used and configured to avoid danger to equipment or personnel.

Jog robot axes in independent mode

It is not possible to jog axes in independent mode. You need to return the axes to normal mode in order to jog. Please see *Application manual - Controller software IRC5* for details.

Jog while using world zones

With the option *World Zones* installed, defined zones will restrict motion while you jog. Please see *Application manual - Controller software IRC5* for details.

Jog with axis loads not set

If equipment is mounted on any of the robot axes, then axes loads must be set. Otherwise overload errors might occur when jogging.

How to set axis loads are described in the Product Manuals delivered with your robot.

Jog with tool or payload weights not set

If the weight of tools and payloads is not set, then overload errors might occur when jogging. Loads for additional axes controlled by specific software (dynamic models) can only be set in programing.

4.5 Coordinated jogging

4.5 Coordinated jogging

Coordination

A robot that is coordinated to a work object will follow the movements of that work object.

Coordinated jogging

If the mechanical unit moving the work object is jogged, any robot that is currently coordinated with the work object will move so that it maintains its relative position to the work object.

Set up coordination

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Select the robot that is to be coordinated to another mechanical unit. See Selecting mechanical unit for joint on page 130. | |
| 2 | Set Coordinate system to Work Object. | See Selecting coordinate system on page 136. |
| 3 | Set Work object to the work object moved by the other mechanical unit. See Selecting tool, work object, and pload on page 133. | |
| | | selected, will also affect the robot that is |

Coordinating robots

Coordinating robots, so that when jogging one robot another robot will follow, requires the option *MultiMove*. See *Application manual - MultiMove*.

4.6.1 Selecting mechanical unit for jogging

4.6 Basic settings for jogging

4.6.1 Selecting mechanical unit for jogging

Jogging properties

If your system has more than one robot, that is additional robots or additional axes, then you need to select which mechanical unit to jog when using the joystick.

There are three ways to select mechanical unit:

- Using the Select mechanical unit button.
- Using the Jogging window on the ABB menu.
- Using the Quickset menu Mechanical unit, see Quickset menu, Mechanical unit on page 79.

Any changes you make to jogging properties only affects the currently selected mechanical unit.

All jogging properties are saved and restored when you return to jog that mechanical unit.

Identifying mechanical units

Each mechanical unit that can be jogged is represented in the mechanical units list. The name of the unit is defined in the system configuration. Each unit also has a symbol that is used in the Status bar, see section *Status bar on page 77*.

In manual mode, the Quickset menu button displays which mechanical unit is selected.

Please consult your plant or cell documentation to see which mechanical units are available in your robot system.

Selecting mechanical unit using the hard button

Press the **Select mechanical unit** button to change unit. One press on the button changes to the next mechanical unit, as steps in a cycle.



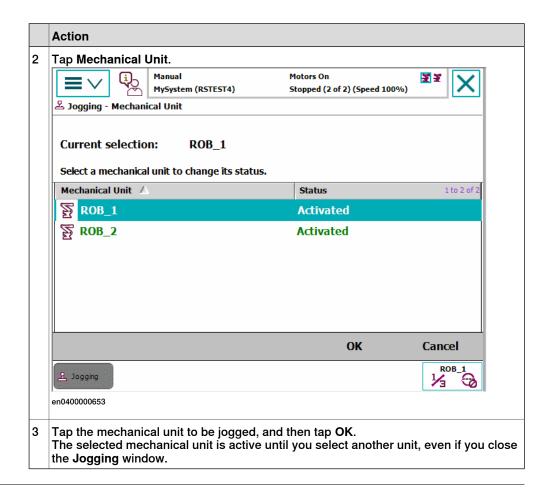
xx0900000051

Selecting mechanical unit in the Jogging window

Use this procedure to select a mechanical unit to jog in the Jogging window.

| | Action |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |

4.6.1 Selecting mechanical unit for jogging Continued



Examples of use

Your robot system may consist of more than a single robot. There can also be other mechanical units such as workpiece handlers or additional axes mounted on the robot that can also be jogged.

Related information

If the system uses *Multitasking*, and has more than one motion task, and uses more than one mechanical unit, then the selected mechanical unit can be switched automatically when switching between **Program Editor** windows. See section *Program Editor on page 63*.

Mechanical units can be activated or deactivated with the **Activate** function in the **Jogging** window.

4.6.2 Selecting motion mode

4.6.2 Selecting motion mode

Motion mode

There are three ways to select motion mode:

- 1 Using the Toggle motion mode button.
- 2 Using the Jogging window on the ABB menu.
- 3 Using the **Quickset** menu **Mechanical unit**, see *Quickset menu, Mechanical unit on page 79*.

Selecting motion mode using the toggle button

Press the Toggle motion mode reorient/linear button to switch motion mode.



Selecting motion mode in the Jogging window

Use this procedure to select motion mode in the Jogging window.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tapJogging. | |
| 2 | Tap Motion mode. | |
| 3 | Tap on the mode you want and then tap OK . | The significance of the joystick directions are shown in Joystick direction after making the selection. |

Related information

Joystick directions on page 127.

4.6.3 Selecting tool, work object, and payload

4.6.3 Selecting tool, work object, and payload

Overview

It is always important to choose the proper tool, work object, or payload. It is absolutely vital when you create a program by jogging to the target positions.

Failing to do so will most likely result in overload errors and/or incorrect positioning either when you jog or when you run the program in production.

Selecting tool, work object, and payload

| | Action | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, choose Jogging to view jogging properties. | |
| 2 | Tap Tool, Work object, or Payload to display the lists of available tools, work object or payloads. | |
| 3 | Tap the tool, work object, or payload of choice followed by OK. | |

4.6.4 Setting the tool orientation

4.6.4 Setting the tool orientation

Examples of use

Tools for arc welding, grinding and dispensing must be oriented in a particular angle to the work piece to obtain the best result. You also need to set up the angle for drilling, milling or sawing.

In most cases you set the tool orientation when you have jogged the tool center point to a specific position such as the starting point for a tool operation. After you have set the tool orientation you continue to jog in linear motion to complete the path and the supposed operation.

Definition of tool orientation

The tool orientation is relative to the currently selected coordinate system. From a user perspective however this is not noticeable.

Setting the tool orientation

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Motion Mode, then tap Reorient followed by OK. |
| 3 | If not already selected, select the proper tool by following the procedure in <i>Selecting tool, work object, and payload on page 133</i> . |
| 4 | Press and hold the three-position enabling device to activate the mechanical unit's motors. |
| | Move the joystick and the tool's orientation changes. |



Tip

Use the QuickSet menu to select jogging mode faster.

4.6.5 Jog axis by axis

4.6.5 Jog axis by axis

Jogging axis by axis

There are three ways to select axis for jogging.

- Using the Toggle motion mode axis group button.
- · Using the Jogging window on the ABB menu.
- Using the Quickset menu Mechanical unit, see Quickset menu, Mechanical unit on page 79.

In manual mode, the Quickset menu button displays which axis group is selected. How to use the joystick when jogging axis by axis is displayed in the **Joystick directions** area. See *Illustration of axes and joystick directions on page 122*.

Examples of use

Use axis by axis jogging when you need to:

- · Move the mechanical unit out of a hazardous position.
- · Move robot axes out of singularities.
- Position axes for fine calibration.

Selecting axis group using the toggle button

Press the Toggle motion mode axis group button to switch motion mode.



xx0900000053

Selecting axis group in the Jogging window

Use this procedure to select axis group in the Jogging window.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Motion Mode. |
| 3 | Tap on the axis group 1-3 or 4-6 and then tap OK. |



CAUTION

The orientation of any mounted tool will be affected by this procedure. If the resulting orientation is important, perform the procedure described in *Setting the tool orientation on page 134* when finished.

4.6.6 Selecting coordinate system

4.6.6 Selecting coordinate system

Coordinate systems for jogging

The coordinate system most suitable for your jogging depends on many things. See section *Coordinate systems for jogging on page 121*, for more information.

There are two ways to select coordinate system:

- · Using the Jogging window on the ABB menu.
- Using the Quickset menu Mechanical unit, see Quickset menu, Mechanical unit on page 79.

Prerequisites

Select motion mode suitable for the intended jogging.

Stationary tools in the tool coordinate system

If your robot system uses stationary tools, you must select both the proper tool and the proper work object (held by the robot) to jog in tool coordinates.

The tool coordinate system is defined by the position and orientation of the stationary tool and is fixed in space. To perform the intended operations you move the work object. This way positions can be expressed in the tool coordinate system.

Selecting coordinate system

Use this procedure to select coordinate system in the Jogging window.

| | Action |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Coordinate System. |
| 3 | Tap to select a coordinate system. |
| 4 | Тар ОК. |

4.6.7 Locking the joystick in specific directions

Overview

The joystick can be locked in specific directions to prevent movement for one or more axes.

This may be useful for instance while fine tuning positions or when programming operations that should only be performed in the direction of a specific coordinate system axis.

Note that the axes locked depends on the currently selected motion mode.

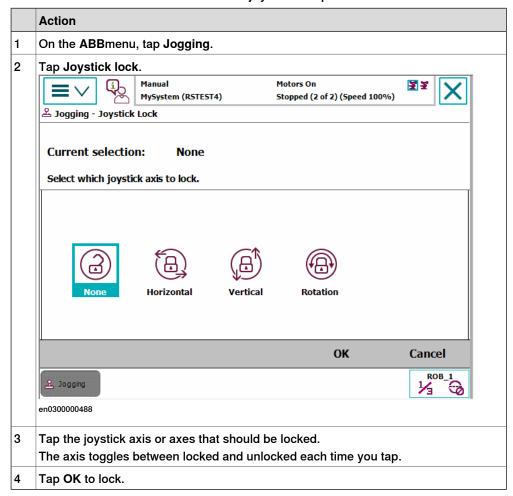
Which axes are locked?

This section describes how to see which joystick directions are locked

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging to view jogging properties. |
| 2 | Tap Joystick lock to check the joystick properties, or check the Joystick directions area properties in the right hand corner of the window. |
| | A padlock symbol is displayed for locked axes. |

Locking the joystick in specific directions

This section describes how to lock the joystick in specific directions.



4 Jogging

4.6.7 Locking the joystick in specific directions *Continued*

Unlocking all axes

This section describes how to unlock all axes from the joystick directions lock.

| | Action |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Joystick lock. |
| 3 | Tap None, then tap OK. |

4.6.8 Incremental movement for precise positioning

Incremental movement

Use incremental movement to jog the robot in small steps, which enables very precise positioning.

This means that each time the joystick is deflected, the robot moves one step (increment). If the joystick is deflected for one or more seconds, a sequence of steps, (at a rate of 10 steps per second), will be performed as long as the joystick is deflected.

Default mode is no increment, then the robot moves continuously when the joystick is deflected.

There are three ways to select the increment size:

- Using the Toggle increments button.
- · Using thee Jogging window on the ABB menu.
- Using the Quickset menu Increments, see Quickset menu, Increment on page 84.

To use the toggle button you must first select an increment size in the **Jogging** window or **Quickset** menu.

Selecting increments using the toggle button

Press the **Toggle increments** button to switch increment size, you toggle between no increments and the increment size you previously selected in the **Jogging** window.



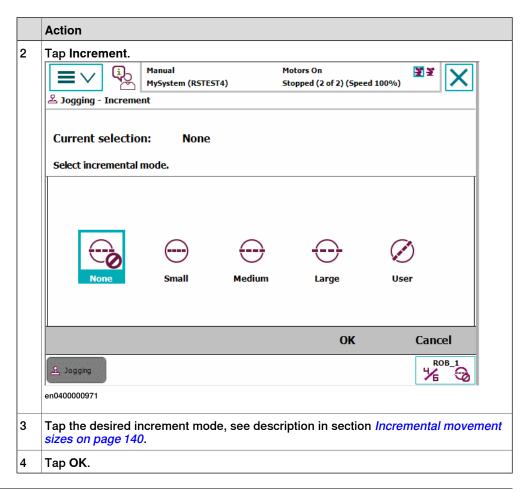
xx0900000054

Selecting increments in the Jogging window

Use this procedure to select the incremental movement size using the **Jogging** window.

| | Action |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |

4.6.8 Incremental movement for precise positioning *Continued*



Incremental movement sizes

Choose between small, medium or large increments. You can also define your own increment movement sizes.

| Increment | Distance | Angular |
|-----------|----------|---------|
| Small | 0.05 mm | 0.005° |
| Medium | 1 mm | 0.02° |
| Large | 5 mm | 0.2° |
| User | | |

4.6.9 Reading the exact position

4.6.9 Reading the exact position

About positions and revolution counters

The exact position of the robot is determined using the position of the resolvers and counters that count the number of resolver revolutions. These are called revolution counters.

If the robot is correctly calibrated then the current position is automatically calculated at start.



CAUTION

If the positions are displayed in red text then the values from the revolution counters are lost and instead the values stored on the SMB are displayed. Be careful when jogging the robot if the values are displayed in red text. Watch the robot closely and do not use the displayed values! If the mechanical unit is uncalibrated then the actual position can be very different from the position values stored by the SMB. You must update the revolution counters before a program can be started. See *Updating revolution counters on page 290*.



Note

If no positions are displayed then the mechanical unit is uncalibrated. Instead the text **Selected mechanical unit is not calibrated** is displayed.



Note

When updating the revolution counters, the ongoing RAPID instruction or function is interrupted, and the path is cleared.

How robot positions are displayed

Positions are always displayed as:

- The point in space expressed in the x, y, and z tool center point coordinates.
- The angular rotation of the tool center point expressed in Euler angles or as a quaternion.

How additional axes' positions are displayed

When an additional axis is moved, only the axis position is displayed.

Linear axis positions are displayed in millimeters expressed as the distance to the calibration position.

Rotating axis positions are displayed in degrees expressed as the angle to the calibration position.

Reading the exact position

This procedure describes how to read the exact position.

| | Action |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu tap .Jogging. |

4.6.9 Reading the exact position

Continued

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 2 | The position is displayed in the Position area properties in the right hand side of the window. |
| | See illustration in <i>Jogging on page 58</i> . |

Position format

The position can be displayed in different formats. Tap **Position Format** to change settings.

The **Position** can be displayed relative the following frames:

- World
- Base
- Work object

The Orientation format can be set to:

- Quaternion
- · Euler angles

The Position angle format can be set to:

Angles

The Presentation angle unit can be set to:

- Degrees
- Radians

4.6.10 Aligning tools

4.6.10 Aligning tools

Overview

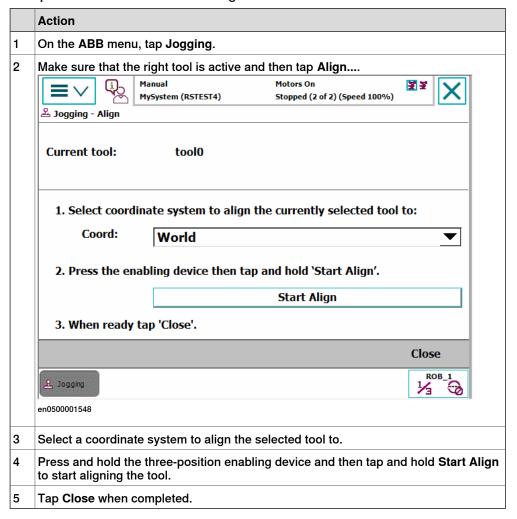
A tool can be aligned with another coordinate system.

When aligning a tool, the tool's z axis is aligned to the selected coordinate system's nearest axis. Therefore it is recommended to first jog the tool so it is close to the desired coordinates.

Note that the tool's data is not changed!

Aligning mechanical units

This procedure describes how to align tools.





5.1 Before you start programming

5 Programming and testing

5.1 Before you start programming

Programming tools

You can use both the FlexPendant and RobotStudio for programming. The FlexPendant is best suited for modifying programs, such as positions and paths, while RobotStudio is preferred for more complex programming.

How to program using RobotStudio is described in Operating manual - RobotStudio.

Define tools, payloads, and work objects

Define tools, payloads and work objects before you start programming. You can always go back and define more objects later, but you should define your basic objects in advance.



WARNING

It is important to always define the actual tool load and, when used, the payload of the robot (for example a gripped part). Incorrect definitions of load data can result in overloading of the robot mechanical structure.

When incorrect load data is specified, it can often lead to the following consequences:

- The robot will not be used to its maximum capacity
- · Impaired path accuracy including a risk of overshooting
- · Risk of overloading the mechanical structure

The controller continuously monitors the load and writes an event log if the load is higher than expected. This event log is saved and logged in the controller memory.

Define coordinate systems

Make sure the base and world coordinate systems have been set up properly during the installation of your robot system. Also make sure that additional axes have been set up.

Define tool and work object coordinate systems before you start programming. As you add more objects later you also need to define the corresponding coordinate systems.



Tip

For more details about the RAPID language and structure, see *Technical reference* manual - RAPID overview and *Technical reference* manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types.

5.2 Using RAPID programs

5.2 Using RAPID programs

Using the RAPID program

This procedure describes the main steps required in creating, saving, editing and debugging any RAPID program.

Note that there is more information available, than the one referred to in the procedure.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Start by creating a RAPID program. | How to create a RAPID program is detailed in section <i>Handling of programs on page 148</i> . |
| 2 | Edit your program. | Proceed as detailed in section <i>Handling of instructions on page 160</i> . |
| 3 | To simplify programming and keep an overview of the program, you may want to divide the program into more than one module. | How to view, add, or delete a module is detailed in section <i>Handling of modules on page 151</i> . |
| 4 | To further simplify programming, you may want to divide the module into more than one routine. | How to add or delete a routine is detailed in section <i>Handling of routines on page 155</i> . |
| 5 | When programming you may want to work with: Tools Work objects Payloads | Also read the following sections: Creating a tool on page 175. Creating a work object on page 190. Creating a payload on page 198. |
| 6 | In order to deal with potential errors that may occur during program execution, you may want to create an error handler. | Error handlers are described in the <i>RAPID</i> manuals. |
| 7 | After completing the actual RAPID program, it will require testing before being put into production. | Proceed as detailed in section <i>Testing on page 204</i> . |
| 8 | After test running your RAPID program, it may require altering. You may want to modify, or tune, programmed positions, the TCP positions, or paths. | How to modify positions while the program is running is described in section <i>HotEdit menu on page 54</i> . How to modify positions in manual mode is described in section <i>Modifying positions in the Program Editor or Production Window on page 260</i> . |
| 9 | Programs that are no longer required may be removed. | |

Running the program

This procedure specifies how to use an existing RAPID program.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Load an existing program. | Described in section <i>Starting programs on page 237</i> . |
| 2 | When starting program execution, you may choose between running the program once, or running it continuously. | Described in section <i>Quickset menu, Run Mode on page 85</i> . |

5.2 Using RAPID programs Continued

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | Once the program has been loaded, you may start program execution. | Described in section Starting programs on page 237 and in Using multitasking programs on page 241. |
| 4 | After program execution is completed, the program may be stopped. | Proceed as detailed in section Stopping programs on page 240. |

5.3.1 Handling of programs

5.3 Programming concept

5.3.1 Handling of programs

Overview

This section details how to perform normal handling of robot programs. It describes how to:

- · create a new program
- load an existing program
- · save a program
- · rename a program
- delete a program

Each task must contain *one* program, no more, no less. Note that the following procedures describe a single task system, i.e. only one task is available.

How to create a new program when no program is available is detailed in section Creating a new program on page 148.

About program files

When saving a program to the controller hard disk, it is by default saved to the directory HOME in the system's folder unless otherwise stated. How to set another default path is detailed in section *Setting default paths on page 100*.

The program is saved as a folder, named as the program, containing the actual program file, of type pgf.

When loading a program you open the program folder and select the pgf file.

When renaming a program you rename the program folder and the program file.

When saving a loaded program which is already saved to the hard disk, you must not open the existing program folder. Instead, you should save the program folder again and overwrite the old version, or rename the program.

Creating a new program

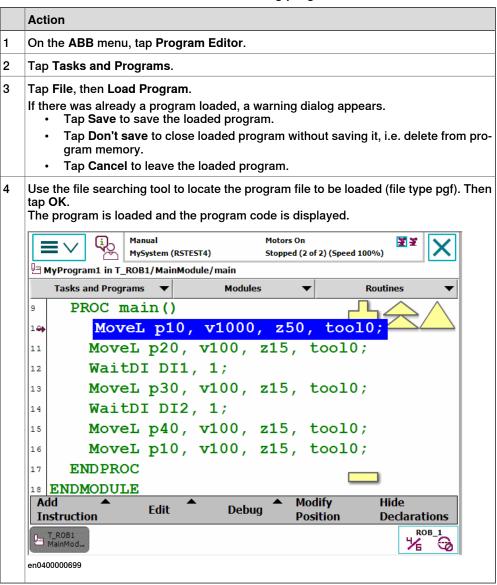
This section describes how to create a new program.

| | Action | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. | |
| 2 | Tap Tasks and Programs. | |
| 3 | Tap File, then New Program. If there was already a program loaded, a warning dialog appears. Tap Save to save the loaded program. Tap Don't Save to close loaded program without saving it, i.e. delete from program memory. Tap Cancel to leave the program loaded. | |
| 4 | Continue by adding instructions, routines, or modules. A new program is created. | |

5.3.1 Handling of programs Continued

Loading an existing program

This section describes how to load an existing program.



Saving a program

This section describes how to save a loaded program to the controller's hard disk. A loaded program is automatically saved in the program memory, but saving to the controller hard disk is an extra precaution.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Tasks and Programs. |
| 3 | Tap File and select Save Program As |
| 4 | Use the suggested program name or tap to open the soft keyboard and enter a new name. Then tap OK. |

5.3.1 Handling of programs *Continued*

Renaming a loaded program

This section describes how to rename a loaded program.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Tasks and Programs. |
| 3 | Tap File and select Rename Program. A soft keyboard is displayed. |
| 4 | Use the soft keyboard to enter the new name of the program. Then tap OK. |

Deleting a program

This section describes how to delete a program.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Tasks and Programs. |
| 3 | Tap File and select Delete Program. A confirmation dialog is displayed. |
| 4 | Tap OK to delete, or Cancel to keep the program intact. |

5.3.2 Handling of modules

5.3.2 Handling of modules

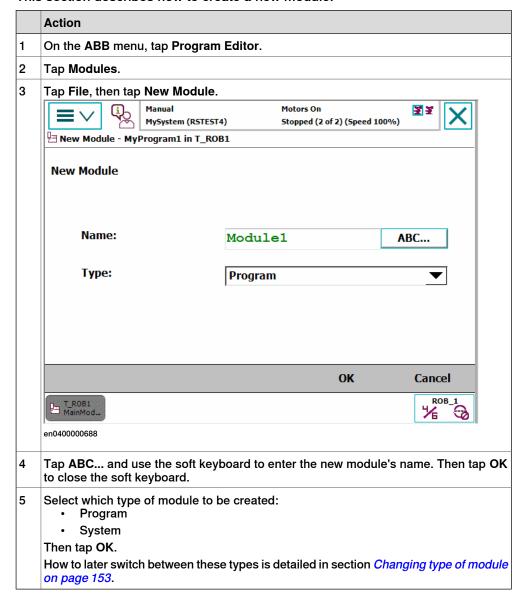
Overview

This section details how to handle program modules. i.e.:

- · create a new module
- · load an existing module
- · save a module
- · rename a module
- · delete a module

Creating a new module

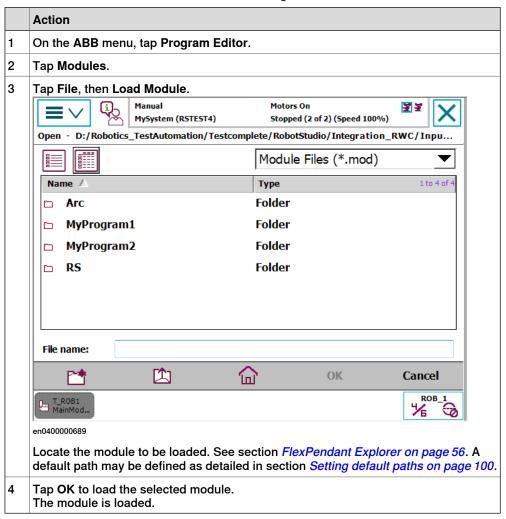
This section describes how to create a new module.



5.3.2 Handling of modules *Continued*

Loading an existing module

This section describes how to load an existing module.

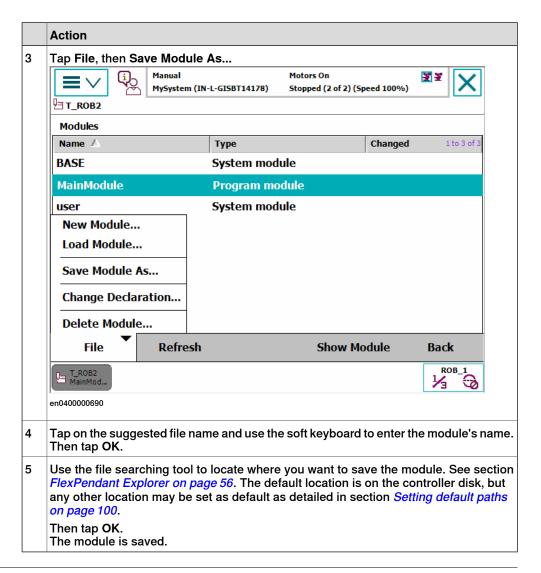


Saving a module

This section describes how to save a module.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Modules and tap to select the module you want to load. |

5.3.2 Handling of modules Continued



Renaming a module

This section describes how to rename a module.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Modules. |
| 3 | Tap File, then Rename Module The soft keyboard is displayed. |
| 4 | Use the soft keyboard to enter the module's name. Then tap OK. |

Changing type of module

This section describes how to change the type of module.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Modules and select the module to be changed. |
| 3 | Tap File, then Change declaration |
| 4 | Tap Type and select module type. |

5.3.2 Handling of modules *Continued*

| | Action |
|---|---------|
| 5 | Тар ОК. |

Deleting a module

This section describes how to delete a module from memory. If the module has been saved to disk, it will not be erased from the disk.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Modules and tap to select the module you want to delete. |
| 3 | Tap File, then Delete Module A dialog box is displayed. |
| 4 | Tap OK to delete the module without saving it. If you want to save the module first, tap Cancel and save the module first. How to save the module is detailed in section <i>Saving a module on page 152</i> . |

5.3.3 Handling of routines

5.3.3 Handling of routines

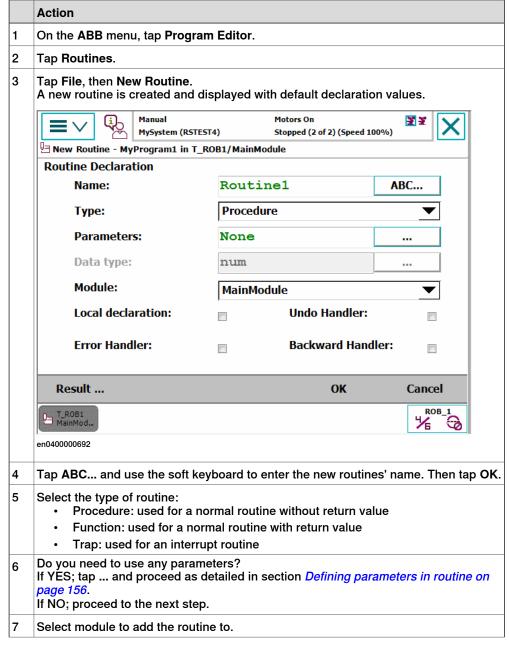
Overview

This section details how to handle program routines. i.e.:

- · create a new routine
- · create a copy of a routine
- · change the declaration of a routine
- delete a routine

Creating a new routine

This section details how to create a new routine, set the declaration, and add it to a module.



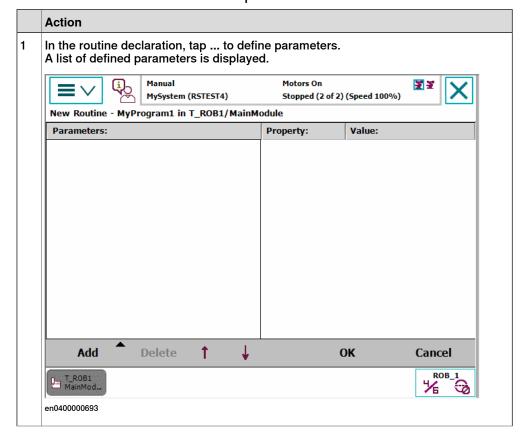
5.3.3 Handling of routines

Continued

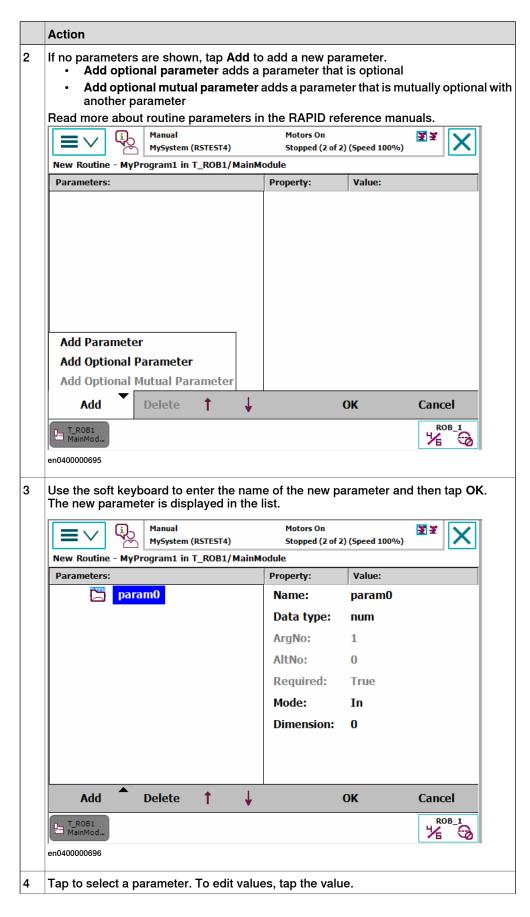
| | Action |
|---|---|
| 8 | Tap the checkbox to select Local declaration if the routine should be local. A local routine can only be used in the selected module. |
| 9 | Тар ОК. |

Defining parameters in routine

This section describes how to define parameters in a routine.



5.3.3 Handling of routines Continued



5.3.3 Handling of routines

Continued

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 5 | Tap OK to return to the routine declaration. |

Creating a copy of a routine

This section describes how to create a copy of a routine.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Routines. |
| 3 | Highlight the routine by tapping it. |
| 4 | Tap File, then Copy Routine. The new routine is displayed. The name of the new routine is set to the same as the original with the suffix Copy. |
| 5 | Make any changes in the declarations for the new routine copy. Then tap OK . How to make all declarations is detailed in section <i>Creating a new routine on page 155</i> . |

Changing the declaration of a routine

This section describes how to change the declaration of a routine.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Routines. |
| 3 | Highlight the routine by tapping it. |
| 4 | Tap File, then Change Declaration |
| 5 | Change any declaration values for the routine. Then tap OK . Declaration settings are described in section <i>Creating a new routine on page 155</i> . |

Moving a routine

This section describes how to move a routine to another module.

| | Action |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Routines. |
| 3 | Highlight the routine by tapping it. |
| 4 | Tap File, then Move Routine |
| 5 | Select task and module. Then tap OK. |

Deleting a routine

This section describes how to delete a routine from memory.

| | Action | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. | |
| 2 | Tap Routines. | |
| 3 | Highlight the routine by tapping it. | |
| 4 | Tap File, then Delete Routine A dialog box is displayed. | |

5.3.3 Handling of routines *Continued*

| | Actio | Action | |
|---|-------|---|--|
| 5 | | OK to delete the routine without saving any changes made to it. Cancel to revert without deleting the routine. | |

5.3.4 Handling of instructions

5.3.4 Handling of instructions

Instructions

A RAPID program consists of instructions. An instruction can, for example, move the robot, set an I/O signal, or write a message to the operator.

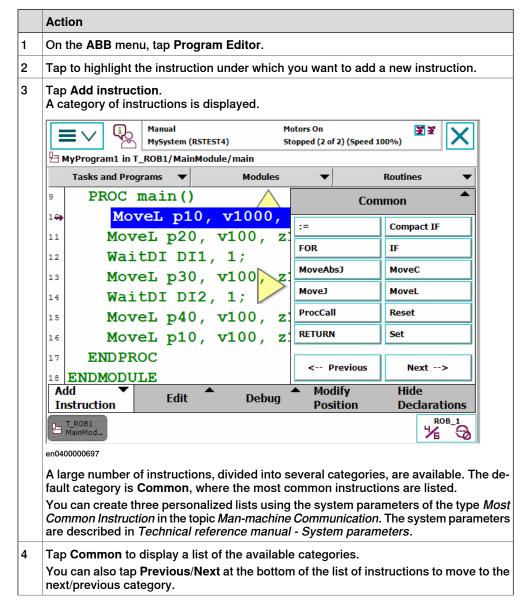
A large number of instructions are available, and these are listed in *Technical* reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types. The basic procedure for adding instructions are, however, identical.

Undo and redo

When editing programs in the Program editor, you can undo and redo up to three steps. This function is available in the **Edit** menu.

Adding instructions

This section describes how to add instructions.

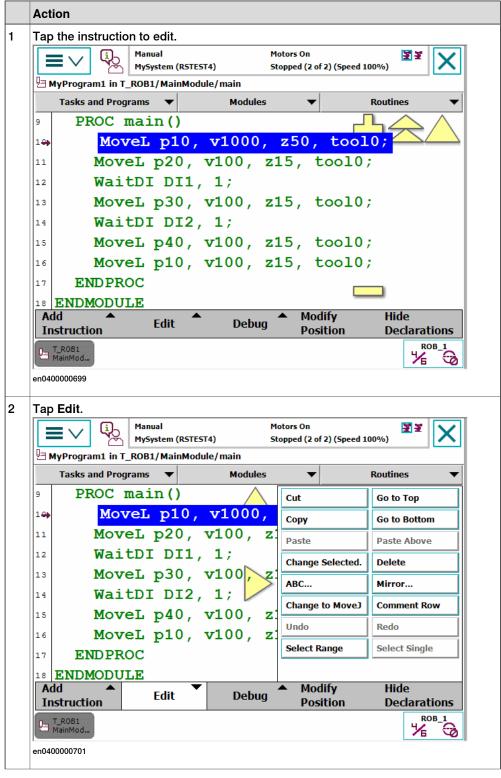


5.3.4 Handling of instructions Continued

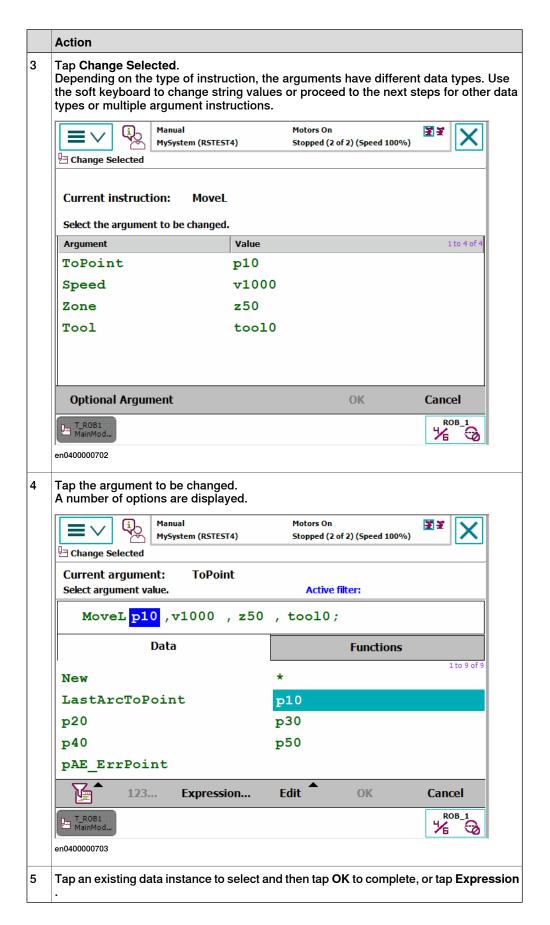
| | Action |
|---|--|
| 5 | Tap the instruction you want to add. The instruction is added to the code. |

Editing instruction arguments

This section describes how to edit instruction arguments.



5.3.4 Handling of instructions *Continued*



5.3.4 Handling of instructions Continued



Tip

Tapping twice on an instruction will automatically launch the Change selected option. Tapping twice on an instruction argument will automatically launch the argument editor.

Copying and pasting instructions or arguments

This section describes how to paste instructions or arguments.

| | Action | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Tap to select the argument or instruction you want to copy. | |
| | To select more than one row: select the first row, tap Select Range in the Edit menu and then tap the last row. | |
| 2 | Tap Edit and then tap Copy. | |
| 3 | Place the cursor on the instruction above where you want to paste the instruction or argument, or tap on the argument or instruction you want to change and tap Paste. | |

Cutting an instruction

This section describes how to cut an instruction.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Tap to select the instruction you want to cut. To select more than one row: select the first row, tap Select Range in the Edit menu and then tap the last row. |
| 2 | Tap Edit and then tap Cut. |

Changing motion mode for a move instruction

This section describes how to change the motion mode for a move instruction.

| | Action | |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Tap to select the move instruction you want to change and then tap Edit. | |
| 2 | Tap Change to MoveJ or Change to MoveL. The change is performed. | |

Commenting instruction rows

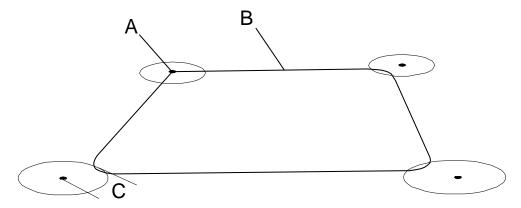
Instruction rows can be commented, i.e. skipped in the program execution. The comment/uncomment command is found under the Edit menu in the **Program** Editor.

5.3.5 Example: Add movement instructions

5.3.5 Example: Add movement instructions

Overview

In this example you will create a simple program that makes the robot move in a square. You need four movement instructions to complete this program.



en0400000801

| Α | First point |
|---|--|
| В | Robot movement Speed data v50 = speed 50mm/s |
| С | Zone z50 = (50mm) |

Add movement instructions

This section details how to add movement instructions.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Jog the robot to the first point. | Tip: Use only left-right/up-down joystick movements to jog in a square. |
| 2 | In the program editor, tap Add Instruction. | |
| 3 | Tap MoveL to insert a MoveL instruction. | |
| 4 | Repeat for the next four positions of the square. | |
| 5 | For the first and last instruction. Tap z50 in the instruction, tap Edit and then Change selected to Fine. Tap OK | |

Result

Your program code should look like this:

```
Proc main()
  MoveL *, v50, fine, tool0;
  MoveL *, v50, z50, tool0;
  MoveL *, v50, z50, tool0;
  MoveL *, v50, z50, tool0;
  MoveL *, v50, fine, tool0;
End Proc;
```

5.3.6 About the Program and Motion Pointers

5.3.6 About the Program and Motion Pointers

The Program Pointer

The Program Pointer (PP) indicates the instruction with which the program will start when you press any of the **Start**, **Forward**, or **Backward** buttons on the FlexPendant.

Program execution continues from the instruction where the Program Pointer is. However, if the cursor is moved to another instruction when the program is stopped, the Program Pointer can be moved to the position of the cursor (or the cursor can be moved to the Program Pointer), and execution can be restarted from there.

The Program Pointer is shown as a yellow arrow to the left of the program code in the Program Editor and Production Window.

The Motion Pointer

The Motion Pointer (MP) indicates the instruction that the robot is currently executing. This is normally one or more instructions after the Program Pointer, as the system executes and calculates the robot path faster than the robot moves.

The Motion Pointer is shown as a small robot to the left of the program code in the **Program Editor** and in the **Production Window**.

The cursor

The cursor can indicate a complete instruction or any of the arguments.

The cursor is shown as blue highlighting of the program code in the **Program Editor**.

Program Editor

If you toggle between the **Program Editor** and another view and back again, the **Program Editor** will show the same part of the code as long as the program pointer has not been moved. If the program pointer is moved, the **Program Editor** shows the code at the position of the program pointer.

The same behavior applies to the **Production Window**.

Related information

Production Window on page 60.

Program Editor on page 63.

Stepping instruction by instruction on page 210.

Starting programs on page 237.

5.4.1 Viewing data in specific tasks, modules, or routines

5.4 Data types

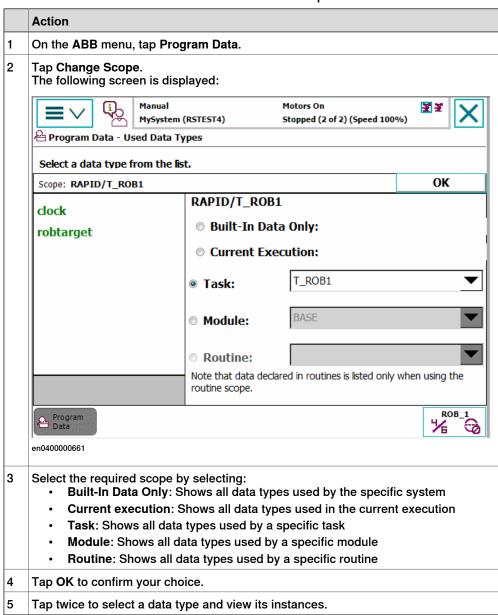
5.4.1 Viewing data in specific tasks, modules, or routines

Overview

It is possible to view selections of data types by selecting a specific scope.

Viewing data in specific tasks, modules, or routines

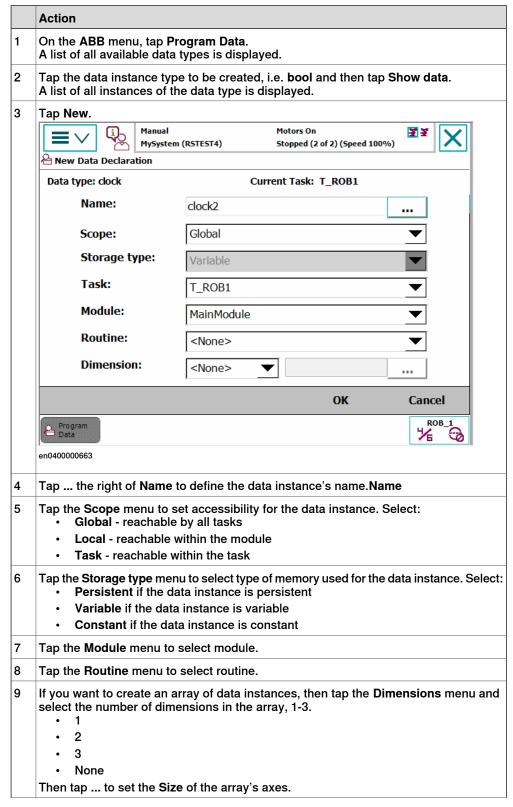
This section details how to view data instances in specific modules or routines.



5.4.2 Creating new data instance

Creating new data instance

This section details how to create new data instances of data types.



5 Programming and testing

5.4.2 Creating new data instance *Continued*

| | Action |
|----|---------|
| 10 | Тар ОК. |

5.4.3 Editing data instances

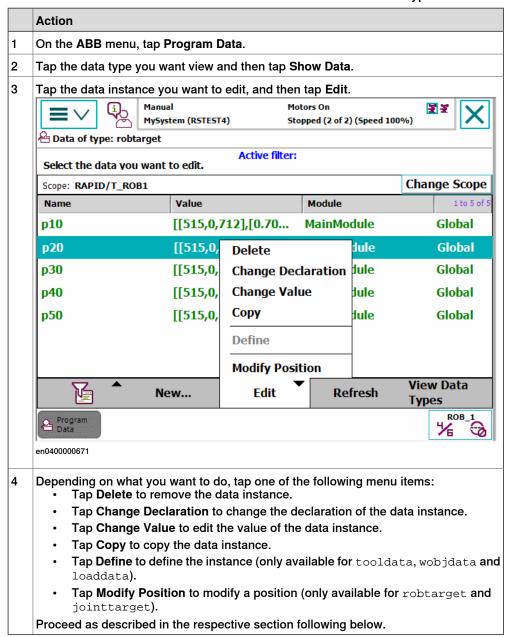
Overview

This section describes how to view data instances in the **Program Data** window. It also details how to edit, delete, change declaration of, copy, and define a data instance.

For the data types tooldata, wobjdata and loaddata also see sections *Tools* on page 173, Work objects on page 189 or Payloads on page 198.

Viewing data instances

This section details how to view the available instances of a data type.



5.4.3 Editing data instances Continued

Editing the value of a data instance

This section describes how to edit a data instance value.

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Tap Change Value to open the instance. | |
| 2 | Tap the value to open a keyboard or list of choices. | The way to edit a value depends on the data type and possible values, for instance text, numbers, predefined values etc. |
| 3 | Select or enter a new value. | |
| 4 | Тар ОК. | |



Note

If the value of a persistent variable is changed at any point in a running program, the **Program Editor** will still show the old value until the program stops. The **Program Data** view, however, always shows the current value of persistent variables. See *Persistent declaration* in the *Technical reference manual - RAPID overview* for further information.

Deleting a data instance

This section details how to delete a data instance.



Note

A data instance can be of type tool, work object, payload or others.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Tap Delete in the menu for the data instance to be deleted, as detailed in section <i>Viewing data instances on page 169</i> . A dialog box is displayed. |
| 2 | Tap Yes if you are sure the data instance is to be deleted. |



CAUTION

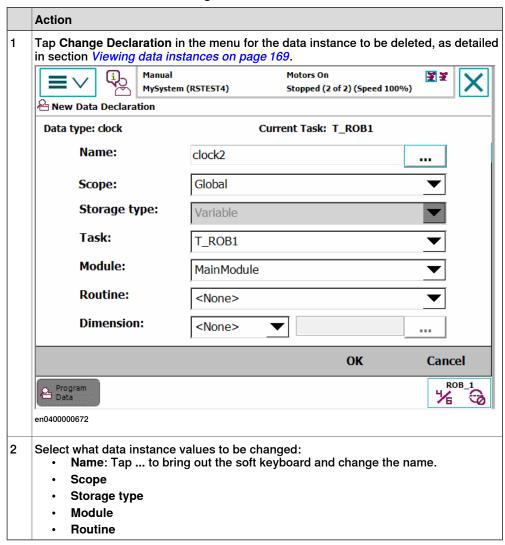
A deleted tool, work object or payload cannot be recovered, and all related data will be lost. If the tool, work object or payload is referenced by any program, those programs cannot run without changes.

If you delete a tool you cannot continue the program from the current position.

5.4.3 Editing data instances Continued

Changing the declaration of a data instance

This section details how to change the declaration of a data instance.



Copying a data instance

This section details how to copy a data instance.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Tap Copy in the menu for the data instance to be copied, as detailed in section <i>Viewing data instances on page 169</i> . A copy of the data instance is created. The copy has the same values as the original, but the name is unique. |

Defining a data instance

How to define the tool frame or work object frame is described in the sections Defining the tool frame on page 178 and Defining the work object coordinate system on page 191.

5 Programming and testing

5.4.3 Editing data instances *Continued*

Modifying position of a data instance

Only instances of data types robtarget and jointtarget can use the function Modify Position. The currently active work object and tool will be used in the operation.

More information about modifying positions is detailed in *Modifying and tuning* positions on page 259.



Note

Make sure that the correct work object and tool are selected when modifying positions in the **Program Data** window. This is not verified automatically by the system.

5.5.1 What is a tool?

5.5 Tools

5.5.1 What is a tool?

Tool

A tool is an object that can be mounted directly or indirectly on the robot turning disk or fitted in a fixed position within the robot working range.

A fixture (jig) is not a tool.

All tools must be defined with a TCP (Tool Center Point).

Each tool that can be used by the robot must be measured and its data stored in order to achieve accurate positioning of the tool center point.



WARNING

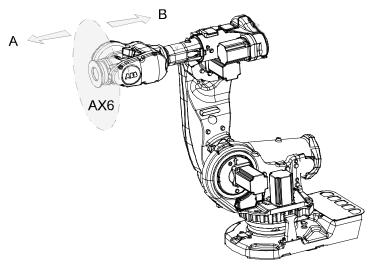
It is important to always define the actual tool load and, when used, the payload of the robot (for example a gripped part). Incorrect definitions of load data can result in overloading of the robot mechanical structure.

When incorrect load data is specified, it can often lead to the following consequences:

- · The robot will not be used to its maximum capacity
- · Impaired path accuracy including a risk of overshooting
- · Risk of overloading the mechanical structure

The controller continuously monitors the load and writes an event log if the load is higher than expected. This event log is saved and logged in the controller memory.

Illustration



en0400000803

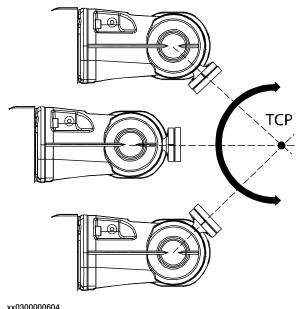
| Α | Tool side |
|---|------------|
| В | Robot side |

5.5.2 What is the tool center point?

5.5.2 What is the tool center point?

Illustration

The illustration shows how the tool center point (TCP) is the point around which the orientation of the tool/manipulator wrist is being defined.



жиооооооо

Description

The tool center point (TCP) is the point in relation to which all robot positioning is defined. Usually the TCP is defined as relative to a position on the manipulator turning disk.

The TCP will be jogged or moved to the programmed target position. The tool center point also constitutes the origin of the tool coordinate system.

The robot system can handle a number of TCP definitions, but only one can be active at any one time.

There are two basic types of TCPs: moveable or stationary.

Moving TCP

The vast majority of all applications deal with moving TCP, i.e. a TCP that moves in space along with the manipulator.

A typical moving TCP can be defined in relation to, for example the tip of a arc welding gun, the center of a spot welding gun, or the end of a grading tool.

Stationary TCP

In some applications a stationary TCP is used, for example when a stationary spot welding gun is used. In such cases the TCP can be defined in relation to the stationary equipment instead of the moving manipulator.

5.5.3 Creating a tool

5.5.3 Creating a tool

What happens when you create a tool?

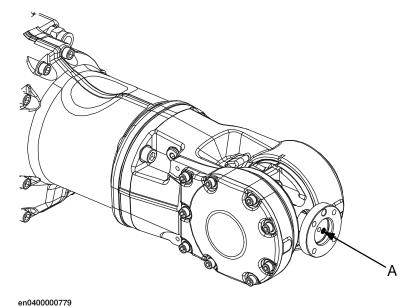
When you create a new tool a variable of the data type tooldata is created. The variable name will be the name of the tool. For more information on data types, see *Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types*.

The new tool has initial default values for mass, frame, orientation etc., which must be defined before the tool can be used.

How to create a tool

The tool center point of the default tool (tool0) is in the center of the robot's mounting flange and shares the orientation of the robot base.

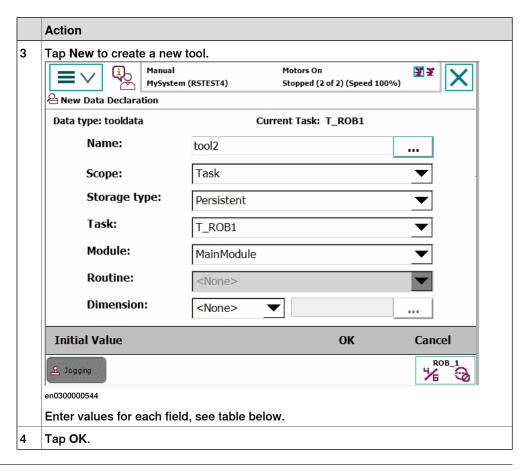
By creating a new tool you define another tool center point. For more information about tools and the tool center points see *What is a tool? on page 173* and *What is the tool center point? on page 174*.



A Tool center point, TCP, for tool0

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Tool to display the list of available tools. |

5.5.3 Creating a tool *Continued*



Tool declaration settings

| If you want to change | then | Recommendation |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| the name of the tool | tap button next to Name | Tools are automatically named tool followed by a running number, for example tool10 or tool21. |
| | | You are recommended to change this to something more descriptive such as gun, gripper or welder. |
| | | Note |
| | | If you change the name of a tool after it is referenced in any program you must also change all occurrences of that tool. |
| the scope | select the preferred scope from the menu | Tools should always be global, as to be available to all modules in the program. |
| the storage type | - | Tool variables must always be persistent. |
| the module | select the module in which this tool should be declared from the menu | |

5.5.3 Creating a tool Continued

| If you want to change | then | Recommendation |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| the size of the data array's axes | tap button next to Dimension | |



Note

The created tool is not useful until you have defined the tool data (TCP coordinates, orientation, weight etc.). See *Editing the tool data on page 182* and *LoadIdentify, load identification service routine on page 220* to learn more about how to do it.

5.5.4 Defining the tool frame

5.5.4 Defining the tool frame

Preparations

To define the tool frame, you first need a reference point in the world coordinate system. If you need to set the tool center point orientation, you also need to affix elongators to the tool.

You also need to decide which method to use for the tool frame definition.

Available methods

There are three different methods which can be used when defining the tool frame. All three require that you define the cartesian coordinates of the tool center point. What differs is how the orientation is defined.

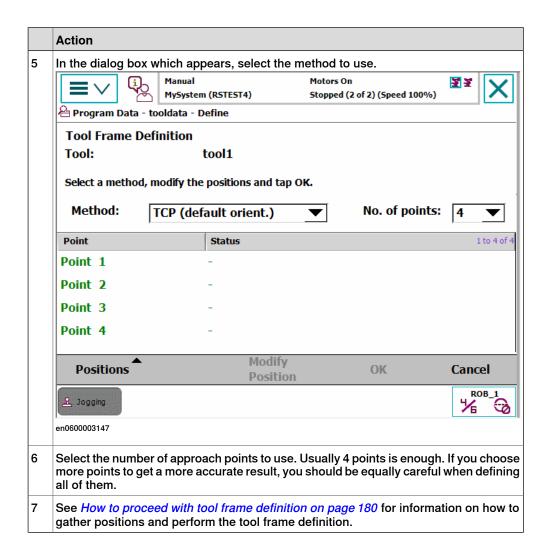
| If you want to | then select |
|---|-----------------------|
| set the orientation the same as the orientation of the robot's mounting plate | TCP (default orient.) |
| set the orientation in Z axis | TCP&Z |
| set the orientation in X and Z axes | TCP&Z,X |

How to select a method

This procedure describes how to select the method to be used when defining the tool frame.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Tool to display a list of available tools. |
| 3 | Select the tool you want to define. |
| 4 | In the Edit menu, tap Define |

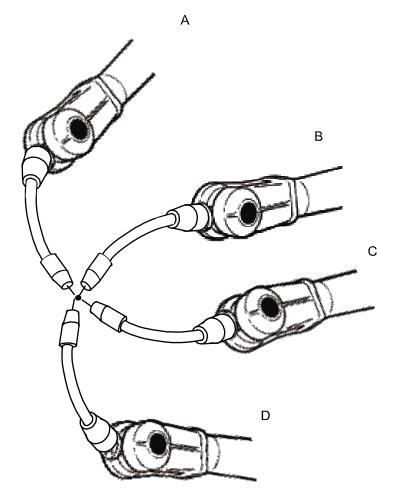
5.5.4 Defining the tool frame *Continued*



5.5.4 Defining the tool frame *Continued*

How to proceed with tool frame definition

This procedure describes how to define the tool center point in Cartesian coordinates.



en0400000906

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Jog the robot to an appropriate position, A, for the first approach point. | Use small increments to accurately position the tool tip as close to the reference point as possible. |
| 2 | Tap Modify Position to define the point. | |
| 3 | Repeat step 1 and 2 for each approach point to be defined, positions B, C, and D. | Jog away from the fixed world point to achieve the best result. Just changing the tool orientation will not give as good a result. |
| 4 | If the method you are using is TCP&Z or TCP&Z,X orientation must be defined as well. | Follow the instructions in <i>How to define</i> elongator points on page 181. |
| 5 | If, for some reason, you want to redo the calibration procedure described in step 1-4, tap Positions and then Reset All. | |

5.5.4 Defining the tool frame *Continued*

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|-------------|
| 6 | When all points are defined you can save them to file, which enables you to reuse them later. On the Positions menu, tap Save . | |
| 7 | Tap OK. The Calculation Result dialog box will now be displayed, asking you to cancel or to confirm the result before it is written to the controller. | |

How to define elongator points

This procedure describes how to define the orientation of the tool frame by specifying the direction of the z and/or x axis. You need to do this only if you the tool orientation should differ from that of the robot base. The tool coordinate system by default resembles the coordinate system of tool0, as illustrated in *Measuring the tool center point on page 183*.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Without changing the orientation of the tool, jog the robot so that the reference world point becomes a point on the desired positive axis of the rotated tool coordinate system. |
| 2 | Tap Modify Position to define the point. |
| 3 | Repeat step 1 and 2 for the second axis if it should be defined. |

Is the calculated result good enough?

The Calculation Result dialog box displays the calculated result of the tool frame definition. You have to confirm that you accept the result before it can take effect in the controller. The alternative is to redo the frame definition in order to achieve a better result. The result Mean Error is the average distance of the approach points from the calculated TCP (tool center point). Max Error is the maximum error among all approach points.

It is hard to tell exactly what result is acceptable. It depends on the tool, robot type etc. you are using. Usually a mean error of a few tenths of a millimeter is a good result. If the positioning has been undertaken with reasonable accuracy the result will be okay.

As the robot is used as a measuring machine, the result is also dependent on where in the robot's working area the positioning has been done. Variation of the actual TCP up to a couple of millimeters (for large robots) can be found between definitions in different parts of the working area. The repeatability of any following TCP calibrations will thus increase if these are done close to the preceding ones. Note that the result is the optimal TCP for the robot in that working area, taking into account any discrepancies of the robot in the configuration at hand.



Tip

A common way to check that the tool frame has been correctly defined is to perform a reorientation test when the definition is ready. Select the reorient motion mode and the tool coordinate system and jog the robot. Verify that the tool tip stays very close to the selected reference point as the robot moves.

5.5.5 Editing the tool data

5.5.5 Editing the tool data

Tool data

Use the value settings to set the tool center point position and physical properties of the tool such as weight and center of gravity.

This can also be done automatically with the service routine LoadIdentify. See sections *Running a service routine on page 213*, or *LoadIdentify, load identification service routine on page 220*.

Displaying the tool data

This section details how to display the tool data.

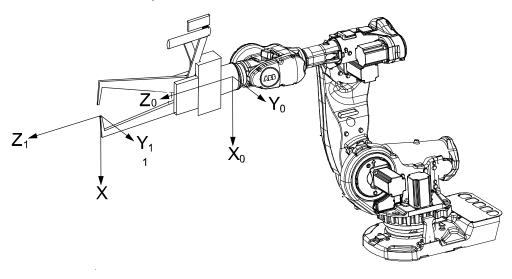
| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Tool to display the list of available tools. |
| 3 | Tap the tool you want to edit, then tap Edit. A menu appears. Change Declaration Change Value Delete Define |
| 4 | In the menu, tap Change Value . The data that defines the tool appears. Green text indicates that the value can be changed. |
| 5 | Proceed with changing the data as described below. |

5.5.5 Editing the tool data *Continued*

Measuring the tool center point

The easiest way to define the tool center point, TCP, is usually to use the predefined method described in *Defining the tool frame on page 178*. If you use this method, you do not have to write any values for the frame as these are supplied by the method.

If you already have the measurements of the tool, or for some reason want to measure them manually, the values can be entered in the tool data.



en0400000881

| Х | X axis for tool0 |
|---|--|
| Υ | Y axis for tool0 |
| Z | Z axis for tool0 |
| X | X axis for the tool you want to define |
| Υ | Y axis for the tool you want to define |
| Z | Z axis for the tool you want to define |

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Measure the distance from the center of the robot's mounting flange to the tool's center point along the X axis of tool0. |
| 2 | Measure the distance from the center of the robot's mounting flange to the tool's center point along the Y axis of tool0. |
| 3 | Measure the distance from the center of the robot's mounting flange to the tool's center point along the Z axis of tool0. |

Editing the tool definition

| | Action | Instance | Unit |
|---|---|----------------|------|
| 1 | Enter the cartesian coordinates of the tool | tframe.trans.x | [mm] |
| | center point's position. | tframe.trans.y | |
| | | tframe.trans.z | |

5.5.5 Editing the tool data *Continued*

| | Action | Instance | Unit |
|---|---|---------------|---------------------|
| 2 | If necessary, enter the tool frame orientation. | tframe.rot.q1 | None |
| | | tframe.rot.q2 | |
| | | tframe.rot.q3 | |
| | | tframe.rot.q4 | |
| 3 | Enter the weight of the tool. | tload.mass | [kg] |
| 4 | If necessary, enter the tool's center of gravity. | tload.cog.x | [mm] |
| | | tload.cog.y | |
| | | tload.cog.z | |
| 5 | If necessary, enter the orientation of the axis | tload.aom.q1 | None |
| | of moment | tload.aom.q2 | |
| | | tload.aom.q3 | |
| | | tload.aom.q4 | |
| 6 | If necessary, enter the tool's moment of inertia. | tload.ix | [kgm ²] |
| | | tload.iy | |
| | | tload.iz | |
| 7 | Tap OK to use the new values, Cancel to leave the definition unchanged. | | |

5.5.6 Editing the tool declaration

5.5.6 Editing the tool declaration

Tool declaration

Use the declaration to change how the tool variable can be used in the program's modules.

Displaying the tool declaration

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Tool to see the list of available tools. |
| 3 | Tap the tool you want to edit, then tap Edit. A menu appears. Change Declaration Change Value Delete Define |
| 4 | In the menu, tap Change Declaration . The tool's declaration appears. |
| 5 | Edit the tool declaration as listed in section Creating a tool on page 175. |



Note

If you change the name of a tool after it is referenced in any program you must also change all occurrences of that tool.

5 Programming and testing

5.5.7 Deleting a tool

5.5.7 Deleting a tool

Deleting a tool

For more information about deleting a tool, see *Deleting a data instance on page 170*.

5.5.8 Setup for stationary tools

5.5.8 Setup for stationary tools

Stationary tools

Stationary tools are used, for instance, in applications that involve large machines such as cutters, presses and punch cutters. You may use stationary tools to perform any operation that would be difficult or inconvenient to perform with the tool on the robot.

With stationary tools, the robot holds the work object.

Make a tool stationary

This section describes how to make a tool stationery.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Tool to display the list of available tools. |
| 3 | Tap the tool you want to edit, then tap Edit. A menu appears. |
| 4 | In the menu, tap Change value. The data that defines the tool appears. |
| 5 | Tap the instance robhold. |
| 6 | Tap FALSE to make this tool stationary. |
| 7 | Tap OK to use the new setup, Cancel to leave the tool unchanged. |

Make a work object robot held

This section describes how to make a work object robot held.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | In the Jogging window, tap Work object to display the list of available work objects. |
| 2 | Tap the work object you want to edit, then tap Edit . A menu appears. |
| 3 | In the menu, tap Change value. The data that defines the work object appears. |
| 4 | Tap the instance robhold. |
| 5 | Tap TRUE to indicate that this work object is held by the robot. |
| 6 | Tap OK to use the new setup, Cancel to leave the work object unchanged. |

Differences in coordinate system referencing

This section describes differences in coordinate system referencing.

| The | normally references the | but now references the |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| work object coordinate system | user coordinate system | user coordinate system (no change) |
| user coordinate system | world coordinate system | robot's mounting plate |
| tool coordinate system | robot's mounting plate | world coordinate system |

5.5.8 Setup for stationary tools *Continued*

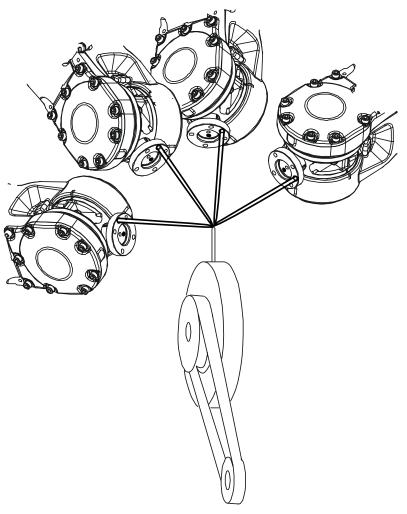
Set up the tool coordinate system

You use the same measurement methods to set up a stationary tool coordinate system as with tools mounted on the robot.

The world reference tip must, in this case, be attached to the robot. Define and use a tool with the reference tip's measurements when you create approach points. You also need to attach elongators to the stationary tool if you need to set up the orientation.

You should enter the reference tip's tool definition manually to minimize errors when calculating the stationary tool's coordinate system.

You may enter the stationary tool's definition manually.



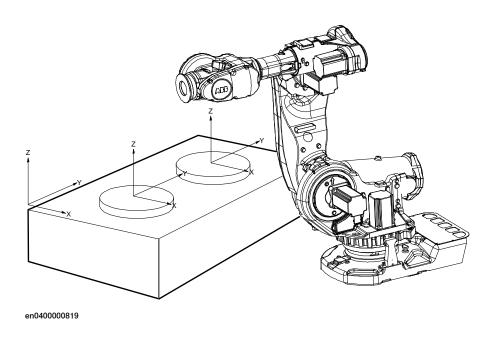
en0400000990

5.6.1 What is a work object?

5.6 Work objects

5.6.1 What is a work object?

Illustration



Description

A work object is a coordinate system with specific properties attached to it. It is mainly used to simplify programming when editing programs due to displacements of specific tasks, objects processes etc.

The work object coordinate system must be defined in two frames, the user frame (related to the world frame) and the object frame (related to the user frame).

Work objects are often created to simplify jogging along the object's surfaces. There might be several different work objects created so you must choose which one to use for jogging.

Payloads are important when working with grippers. In order to position and manipulate an object as accurate as possible its weight must be accounted for. You must choose which one to use for jogging.

5.6.2 Creating a work object

5.6.2 Creating a work object

What happens when I create a work object?

A variable of the type wobjdata is created. The variable's name will be the name of the work object. For more information on data types, see *Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types*.

This is detailed in section What is a work object? on page 189.

Creating a work object

The work object's coordinate system is now identical with the world coordinate system. To define the position and orientation of the work object's coordinate system, see *Editing the work object declaration on page 196*.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Work Object to display the list of available work objects. |
| 3 | Tap New to create a new work object. |
| 4 | Тар ОК. |

Work object declaration settings

| If you want to change | then | Recommendation |
|------------------------|--|---|
| the work object's name | tap the button next to it | Work objects are automatically named wobj followed by a running number, for example wobj10, wobj27. |
| | | You should change this to something more descriptive. |
| | | If you change the name of a work object after it is referenced in any program you must also change all occurrences of that work object. |
| the scope | select the scope of choice from the menu | Work objects should always be global to be available to all modules in the program. |
| the storage type | - | Work object variables must always be persistent. |
| the module | select the module in which this work object should be declared from the menu | |

5.6.3 Defining the work object coordinate system

5.6.3 Defining the work object coordinate system

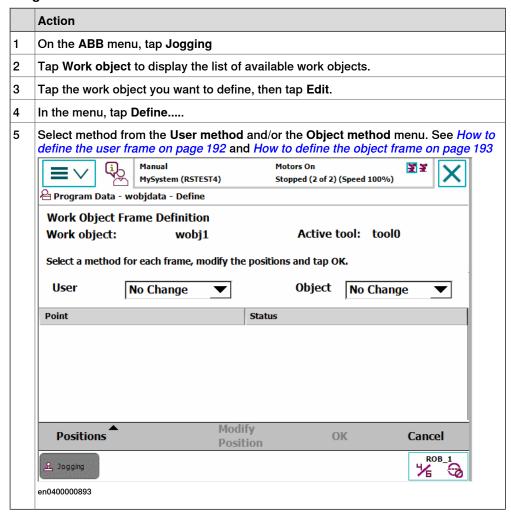
Overview

Defining a work object means that the robot is used to point out the location of it. This is done by defining three positions, two on the x-axis and one on the y-axis.

When defining a work object you can use either the user frame or the object frame or both. The user select frame and the object frame usually coincides. If not, the object frame is displaced from the user frame.

How to select method

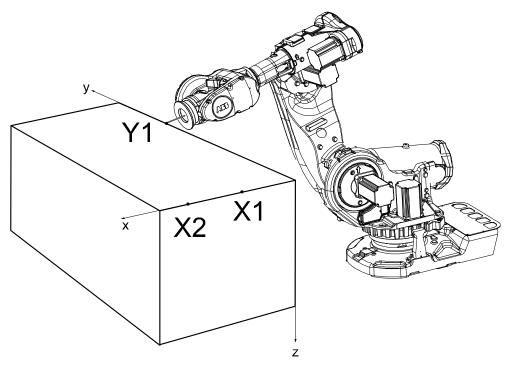
This procedure describes how to select method for defining either user frame or object frame or both. Note that this only works for a user created work object, not the default work object, wobj0. Defining work object can also be done from the **Program Data** window.



5.6.3 Defining the work object coordinate system *Continued*

How to define the user frame

This section details how to define the user frame.



en0400000887

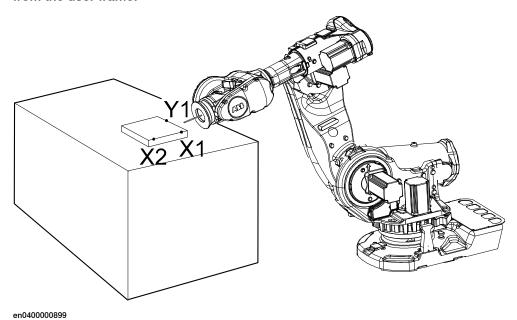
The x axis will go through points X1-X2, and the y axis through Y1.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | In the User method pop up menu, tap 3 points. | |
| 2 | Press the three-position enabling device and jog the robot to the first (X1, X2 or Y1) point that you want to define. | Large distance between X1 and X2 is preferable for a more precise definition. |
| 3 | Select the point in the list. | |
| 4 | Tap Modify Position to define the point. | |
| 5 | Repeat steps 2 to 4 for the remaining points. | |

5.6.3 Defining the work object coordinate system Continued

How to define the object frame

This section describes how to define the object frame if you want to displace it from the user frame.



The x axis will go through points X1-X2, and the y axis through Y1.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | In the Object method pop up menu, tap 3 points. |
| 2 | See steps 2 to 4 in the description of <i>How to define the user frame on page 192</i> . |

How to save the defined positions

Normally the defined positions are only used as temporary positions by the controller to calculate the position of the work object and are then discarded. However, the positions can also be saved to a program module for later use or analysis.

When saving the positions a new program module is created where the positions are stored with predefined names given by the controller. The names of the positions can be changed afterwards, but when loading the positions it is recommended to use the predefined names.



Note

Only the positions (robtargets) are saved. Make sure to note which tool was used when modifying the defined positions.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | When the work object frame definition is completed and all positions have been modified, tap OK . |
| 2 | In the Save Modified Points dialog, tap Yes. |
| 3 | Tap ABC to change the name of the program module, tap OK to accept the name. |

5.6.3 Defining the work object coordinate system *Continued*

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 4 | The names of the positions and the module is displayed in the Save dialog, tap OK. |

How to load defined positions

In some cases it is not practical or possible to use the robot to define the positions. Then the positions can be defined or calculated elsewhere and loaded to the **Work Object Frame Definition** dialog.

Positions from any program module can be can be loaded, but is recommended to use the module from the **Save Modified Points** dialog with predefined position names given by the controller.



CAUTION

Make sure that the correct tool and work object is activated in the **Work Object Frame Definition** dialog before loading any positions.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | In the Work Object Frame Definition dialog, tap Positions and Load. |
| 2 | Tap the module that holds the calibration points, tap OK. |
| 3 | If the controller finds all or any predefined positions in the module, the positions are automatically loaded to the correct user or object point. In the Load dialog, tap OK. |
| 4 | If some positions are missing or do not have the correct names, the controller cannot load the positions automatically so the user is asked to match the positions manually. |
| | Tap each point in the list to assign the positions manually from the drop down list. Tap OK. |
| 5 | If necessary, use Modify Position to define any remaining points that could not be loaded. |

5.6.4 Editing the work object data

5.6.4 Editing the work object data

Overview

Use the work object data definition to set the position and rotation of the user and object frames.

How to display the work object data

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Work object to display the list of available work objects. |
| 3 | Tap the work object you want to edit, then tap Edit. |
| 4 | Tap Change Value. The data that defines the work object appears. |

How to set user and object frame values manually

The easiest way to set the work object and user coordinate systems position is to use the method described in *Defining the work object coordinate system on page 191*. You can however edit the values manually using the guide below.

| Values | Instance | Unit |
|---|----------------|------|
| The cartesian coordinates of the position of the object | oframe.trans.x | mm |
| me | oframe.trans.y | |
| | oframe.trans.z | |
| The object frame orientation | oframe.rot.q1 | - |
| | oframe.rot.q2 | |
| | oframe.rot.q3 | |
| | oframe.rot.q4 | |
| The cartesian coordinates of the position of the user | uframe.trans.x | mm |
| me | uframe.trans.y | |
| | uframe.trans.z | |
| The user frame orientation | uframe.rot.q1 | - |
| | uframe.rot.q2 | |
| | uframe.rot.q3 | |
| | uframe.rot.q4 | |



Note

Editing work object data can also be done from the Program Data window.

5.6.5 Editing the work object declaration

5.6.5 Editing the work object declaration

Overview

Use the declaration to change how the work object variable can be used in the program's modules.

Displaying the work object declaration

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Work object to see the list of available work objects. |
| 3 | Tap the work object you want to edit, then tap Edit. |
| 4 | In the menu, tap Change Declaration. |
| 5 | The work object's declaration appears. |
| 6 | Edit the tool declaration as listed in section Creating a work object on page 190. |



Note

If you change the name of a work object after it is referenced in any program you must also change all occurrences of that work object.

5.6.6 Deleting a work object

5.6.6 Deleting a work object

Deleting a work object

For more information about deleting a work object, see *Deleting a data instance* on page 170.

5.7.1 Creating a payload

5.7 Payloads

5.7.1 Creating a payload

What happens when I create a payload?

A variable of the type loaddata is created. The variables name will be the name of the payload. For more information on data types, see *Technical reference* manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types.

Adding a new payload and setting data declaration

The payloads coordinate system will be set to the position, including orientation, of the world coordinate system.

| | Action | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu tap Jogging. | |
| 2 | Tap Payload or Total Load to display the list of available payloads. | |
| | Note | |
| | Total Load is displayed only when the value of ModalPayLoadMode is set to 0 and the mechanical units are TCP robots. See <i>Setting the value for ModalPayLoadMode on page 199</i> . | |
| 3 | Tap New to create a new payload and enter the data. See Payload declaration settings on page 199. | |
| 4 | Tap OK. | |



WARNING

It is important to always define the actual tool load and, when used, the payload of the robot (for example a gripped part). Incorrect definitions of load data can result in overloading of the robot mechanical structure.

When incorrect load data is specified, it can often lead to the following consequences:

- The robot will not be used to its maximum capacity
- Impaired path accuracy including a risk of overshooting
- · Risk of overloading the mechanical structure

The controller continuously monitors the load and writes an event log if the load is higher than expected. This event log is saved and logged in the controller memory.

5.7.1 Creating a payload *Continued*

Payload declaration settings

| If you want to change | then | Recommendation |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| the payload's name | tap the button next to it | Payloads are automatically named load followed by a running number, for example load10, load31. |
| | | You should change this to something more descriptive. |
| | | If you change the name of a payload after it is referenced in any program you must also change all occurrences of that payload's name. |
| the scope | select the scope of choice from the menu | Payloads should always be global to be available to all modules in the program. |
| the storage type | - | Payload variables must always be persistent. |
| the module | select the module in which this payload should be de- clared from the menu | - |

Setting the value for ModalPayLoadMode

This procedure describes how to modify the value of ModalPayLoadMode:

- 1 On the ABB menu, tap Control Panel and then Configuration.
- 2 Select Controller.
- 3 Select the type System Misc and tap.
- 4 Select ModalPayLoadMode and then tap Edit.
- 5 Tap the parameter Value twice and set to 0.
- 6 Click OK.
- 7 Tap Yes to the question The changes will not take effect until the controller is warm started. Do you want to restart now?.

5.7.2 Editing the payload data

5.7.2 Editing the payload data

Overview

Use the payload data to set physical properties of the payload such as weight and center of gravity.

This can also be done automatically with the service routine LoadIdentify. See sections *Running a service routine on page 213*, or *LoadIdentify, load identification service routine on page 220*.

Displaying the payload definition

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Payload to display the list of available payloads. |
| 3 | Tap the payload you want to edit, then tap Edit. |
| 4 | Tap Change Value. The data that defines the payload appears. |

Changing the payload data

This procedure describes how to manually enter the payload data. This can also be done automatically by running the service routine LoadIdentify. How to run a service routine is described in section *Running a service routine on page 213*.

| | Action | Instance | Unit |
|---|---|-------------|---------------------|
| 1 | Enter the weight of the payload. | load.mass | [kg] |
| 2 | Enter the payload's center of gravity. | load.cog.x | [mm] |
| | | load.cog.y | |
| | | load.cog.z | |
| 3 | Enter the orientation of the axis of moment. | load.aom.q1 | |
| | | load.aom.q2 | |
| | | load.aom.q3 | |
| | | load.aom.q3 | |
| 4 | Enter the payload's moment of inertia. | ix | [kgm ²] |
| | | iy | |
| | | iz | |
| 5 | Tap OK to use the new values, Cancel to leave the data unchanged. | - | - |

Using the PayLoadsInWristCoords parameter

By using the PayLoadsInWristCoords parameter, the loaddata for payloads can be specified relative to the wrist instead of the active TCP or work object. This can be useful if several tool or TCP or work objects (when tool is stationary) are used for one payload. In this case only one load identification is needed instead of one for each tool or TCP or work object. Thus it is possible to use the same payload loaddata for any robhold or stationary tool being active. This saves the time (for example, during commissioning).

5 Programming and testing

5.7.2 Editing the payload data *Continued*

For more information about PayLoadsInWristCoords, see Technical reference manual - System parameters and Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types.

5.7.3 Editing the payload declaration

5.7.3 Editing the payload declaration

Overview

Use the declaration to change how the payload variable can be used in the program's modules.

Displaying the payload declaration

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. |
| 2 | Tap Payload to see the list of available payloads. |
| 3 | Tap the payload you want to edit, then tap Edit. |
| 4 | In the menu, tap Change declaration. |
| 5 | The payload's declaration appears. See Creating a payload on page 198. |



Note

If you change the name of a payload after it is referenced in any program you must also change all occurrences of that payload's name.

5.7.4 Deleting a payload

5.7.4 Deleting a payload

Deleting a payload

For more information about deleting a **payload**, see *Deleting a data instance on page 170*.

5.8.1 About the automatic mode

5.8 Testing

5.8.1 About the automatic mode

What is the automatic mode?

In automatic mode the safety function of the three-position enabling device is bypassed so that the manipulator is allowed to move without human intervention.

The automatic mode is the operating mode in which the robot control system operates in accordance with the task program, with functional safeguarding measures. This mode enables controlling the manipulator for example by using the I/O signals on the controller. An input signal may be used to start and stop a RAPID program, another to activate the motors on the manipulator.



WARNING

Prior to selecting automatic mode, any suspended safeguards shall be returned to their full functionality.

Tasks normally performed in the automatic mode

The following tasks are normally performed in automatic mode.

- · Starting and stopping processes.
- · Loading, starting, and stopping RAPID programs.
- Returning the manipulator to its path when returning to operation after an emergency stop.
- · Backing up the system.
- · Restoring backups.
- · Cleaning tools.
- Preparing or replacing work objects.
- Performing other process oriented tasks.

Limitations in automatic mode

Jogging is not possible in automatic mode. There may be other specific tasks that should not be performed in automatic mode.

Please consult your plant or system documentation to find out which specific tasks should not be performed in automatic mode.

5.8.2 About the manual mode

5.8.2 About the manual mode

What is the manual mode?

In manual mode the manipulator movement is under manual control. The three-position enabling device must be pressed to activate the motors of the manipulator, that is, enabling movement.

The manual mode is used when programming and for program verification.

In some robots, there are two manual modes, the *manual reduced speed* mode and the *manual full speed* mode.

Safety in manual mode

When in manual mode the manipulator is operated with personnel in close proximity. Maneuvering an industrial manipulator is potentially dangerous and therefore maneuvers should be performed in a controlled fashion.

What is the manual reduced speed mode?

In manual reduced speed mode the movement is limited to 250 mm/s. In addition, there is a limitation on the maximum allowed speed for each axis. These axis limitations are robot dependent and cannot be changed.

The three-position enabling device must be pressed to activate the motors of the manipulator.



WARNING

Wherever possible, the manual mode of operation shall be performed with all persons outside the safeguarded space.

What is the manual full speed mode?

The manual full speed mode is used for program verification only.

In manual full speed mode the initial speed limit is up to, but not exceeding, 250 mm/s. This is achieved by limiting the speed to 3% of the programmed speed. Through manual control the speed can be increased up to 100%.

The three-position enabling device must be pressed to activate the motors of the manipulator, and the hold-to-run button must be pressed to start program execution.



WARNING

Wherever possible, the manual mode of operation shall be performed with all persons outside the safeguarded space.

5.8.2 About the manual mode *Continued*

Note that the manual full speed mode is optional and therefore not available in all robots.



Note

As per the updated standard, ISO 10218-1:2011 *Robots and robotic devices – Safety requirements for industrial robots – Part 1 Robots*, the following adaptations are made to the manual full speed mode.

- Resetting the speed to 250 mm/s every time the three-position enabling device is re-initiated by placing the switch in the center-enabled position after either having been released or fully compressed.
- · Editing RAPID programs and jogging the manipulator are disabled.

Tasks normally performed in manual reduced speed mode

The following tasks are normally performed in manual reduced speed mode.

- Jogging the manipulator back on its path when returning to operation after an emergency stop
- · Correcting the value of I/O signals after error conditions
- · Creating and editing RAPID programs
- Starting, stepping, and stopping program execution, for example while testing a program
- · Tuning programmed positions

Tasks normally performed in manual full speed mode

As per the standard, ISO 10218-1:2011, the following tasks can be performed in the manual full speed mode.

- · Starting and stopping program execution for final program verification
- · Stepping program execution
- Setting speed (0–100%)
- Setting program pointer (to Main, to routine, to cursor, to service routine, etc.)

The following tasks cannot be performed in the manual full speed mode:

- · Changing system parameter values
- · Editing system data

5.8.3 Using the hold-to-run function

5.8.3 Using the hold-to-run function

When to use the hold-to-run function

The hold-to-run function is used to run or step programs in manual full speed mode, in combination with the three-position enabling device.

In order to run a program in manual full speed mode it is necessary, for safety reasons, to keep pressing both the three-position enabling device and the Start button. This hold-to-run function also applies when stepping through a program in manual full speed mode. When **Start**, **Forward**, and **Backward** buttons are used like this (press and hold) they are referred to as hold-to-run buttons. Some versions of the FlexPendant also have separate hold-to-run buttons.

| Operational mode | Function |
|---------------------------|--|
| Manual reduced speed mode | Normally, hold-to-run has no effect in the manual reduced speed mode. |
| | However, it is possible to activate for manual reduced speed mode by changing a system parameter. |
| Manual full speed mode | Pressing hold-to-run AND pressing the three-position enabling device enables running a program. It may be run continuously or step-by-step. |
| | Releasing hold-to-run in this mode immediately stops manipulator movement as well as program execution. When pressing it again, execution is resumed from that position. |
| Automatic mode | Hold-to-run is not used in automatic mode. |

Using the hold-to-run function

This instruction details how use the hold-to-run function in manual full speed mode.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Press the three-position enabling device on the FlexPendant. |
| 2 | Choose execution mode by pressing and holding either: • Start (continuous program execution) • Forward (step-by step program execution forwards) • Backward (step-by step program execution backwards) |
| 3 | If Start was pressed, then the program execution continues as long as the Start button is pressed. If Forward or Backward was pressed, the program is executed step-by-step by altern- |
| | ately releasing and pressing the Forward/Backward button. |
| | Note that the button must be pressed and held until the instruction is executed. If the button is released, program execution will stop immediately! |
| 4 | If the three-position enabling device is released, intentionally or by accident, the complete procedure must be repeated to enable running. |

5.8.4 Running the program from a specific instruction

5.8.4 Running the program from a specific instruction

Overview

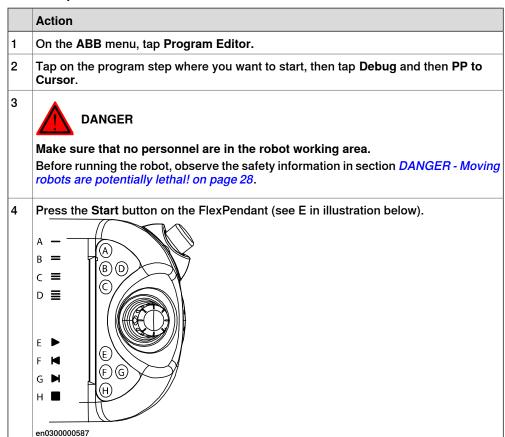
When starting a program the execution starts from the program pointer. To start from another instruction, move the program pointer to the cursor.



WARNING

When execution is started the robot will move to the first programmed position in the program. Make sure that the robot with TCP does not risk running into any obstacles!

Running the program from a specific instruction



5.8.5 Running a specific routine

5.8.5 Running a specific routine

Overview

When starting a program the execution starts from the program pointer. To start from another routine, move the program pointer to the routine.

Prerequisites

In order to run a specific routine the module with the routine must be loaded and the controller must be in manual stopped mode.

Running a specific routine

This procedure describes how to run a specific routine by moving the program pointer.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2 | Tap Debug and then PP to Routine to place the program pointer at the start of the routine. |
| 3 | Press the Start button on the FlexPendant. |

Related information

How to run a service routine is described in *Running a service routine on page 213*. The same method can be used to run a specific routine in the task scope. See *Running a service routine on page 213* for detailed information.

5.8.6 Stepping instruction by instruction

5.8.6 Stepping instruction by instruction

Overview

In all operating modes the program may be executed step by step forwards or backwards.

Stepping backwards is limited, see *Technical reference manual - RAPID overview* for more details.

Select step mode

This section details how to select step mode. Stepping can be done in three ways; step in, step over, and motion step.

| | | Action | Information |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | Select step mode using the Quickset menu. | Described in <i>Quickset menu, Step Mode on page 86</i> . |

Stepping

This section details how to step forwards and backwards.

| If you want to step | then press |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| forward | Forward button on FlexPendant |
| backward | Backward button on FlexPendant |

Limitations of backward execution

There are some restrictions for the backward execution:

- When stepping backwards through a MoveC instruction, the execution does not stop in the circular point.
- It is not possible to step backwards out of a IF, FOR, WHILE and TEST statement.
- It is not possible to step backwards out of a routine when reaching the beginning of the routine.
- There are instructions affecting the motion that cannot be executed backwards (e.g. ActUnit, ConfL and PDispOn). If attempting to execute these backwards, an alert box will inform you that this is not possible.

Backward execution behavior

When stepping forward though the program code, a program pointer indicates the next instruction to execute and a motion pointer indicates the move instruction that the robot is performing.

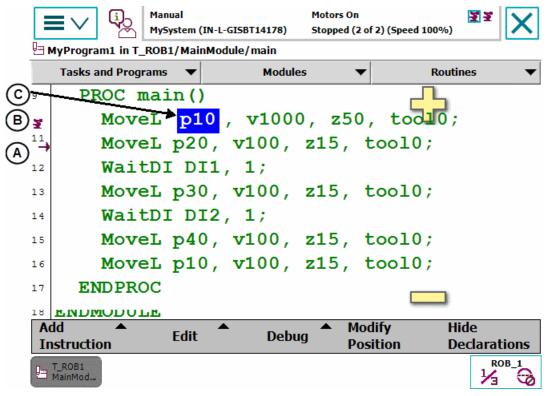
When stepping backward though the program code, the program pointer indicates the instruction above the motion pointer. When the program pointer indicates one move instruction and the motion pointer indicates another, the next backward movement will move to the target indicated by the program pointer, using the type of movement and speed indicated by the motion pointer.

5.8.6 Stepping instruction by instruction Continued

Example of backward execution

This example illustrates the behavior when stepping backwards through move instructions. The program pointer and motion pointer helps you keep track of where the RAPID execution is and where the robot is.

MoveL, MoveJ, and MoveC are move instructions in RAPID, see *Technical reference* manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types.



en0400001204

| Α | Program pointer |
|---|---|
| В | Motion pointer |
| С | Highlighting of the robtarget that the robot is moving towards, or already has reached. |

| When | then |
|--|---|
| stepping forward until the robot is in p5 | the motion pointer will indicate p5 and the program pointer will indicate the next move instruction (${\tt Movel\ p6}$). |
| pressing the Back- ward button once | the robot will not move but the program pointer will move to the previous instruction (MoveC $p3$, $p4$). This indicates that this is the instruction that will be executed the next time Backward is pressed. |
| pressing the Back- ward button again | the robot will move to p4 linearly with the speed v300. The target for this movement (p4) is taken from the MoveC instruction. The type of movement (linear) and the speed are taken from the instruction below (MoveL p5). The motion pointer will indicate p4 and the program pointer will move up to MoveL p2. |

5.8.6 Stepping instruction by instruction *Continued*

| When | then |
|--|---|
| pressing the Back- ward button again | the robot will move circularly, via p3, to p2 with the speed v100. The target p2 is taken from the instruction MoveL p2. The type of movement (circular), the circular point (p3) and the speed are taken from the MoveC instruction. |
| | The motion pointer will indicate p2 and the program pointer will move up to ${\tt Movel\ p1}.$ |
| pressing the Back- ward button again | the robot will move linearly to p1 with the speed v200. The motion pointer will indicate p1 and the program pointer will move up to MoveJ p0. |
| pressing the Forward button once | the robot will not move but the program pointer will move to the next instruction (MoveL $p2$). |
| pressing the Forward button again | the robot will move to p2 with the speed v200. |

5.9.1 Running a service routine

5.9 Service routines

5.9.1 Running a service routine

Service routines

Service routines perform a number of common services. Which service routines are available depends on your system setup and available options. Please refer to your plant or cell documentation for more information.

Prerequisites

Service routines can only be started in manual reduced speed mode or in manual full speed mode.

The program must be stopped and there has to be a program pointer.

It is not possible to call a routine when in synchronized mode.

If the service routine contains parts that must be carried out in automatic mode, then the program pointer must not be moved manually before starting the service routine. The program pointer should be where the program flow was stopped.



WARNING

If a service routine is started in the middle of a stopped movement instruction (that is, before the end position is reached), then the movement will be resumed when the execution of the service routine starts.



CAUTION

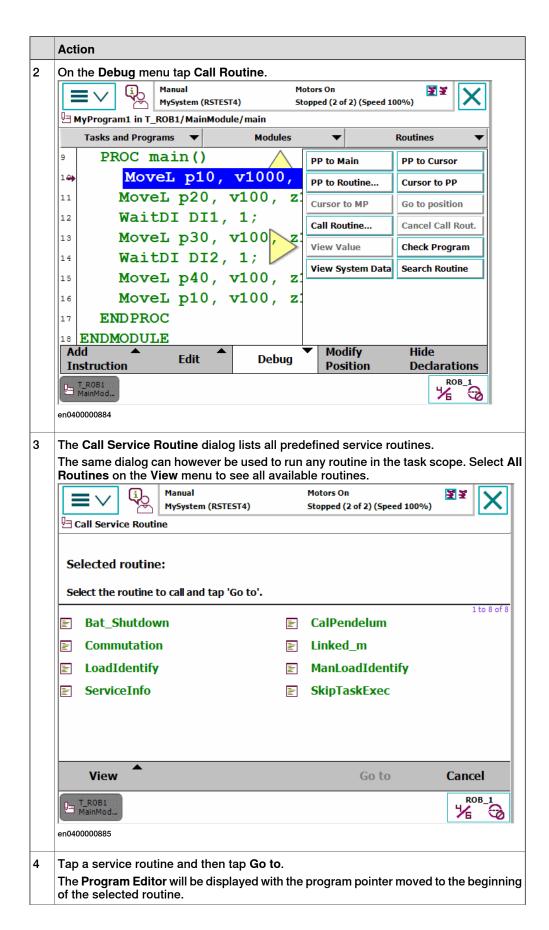
Note that once a service routine has started, aborting it might not resume the system to its previous state, as the routine may have moved the robot arm.

Running a service routine

This section describes how to execute a service routine or another routine in the task scope using **Call Routine**.

| | Action |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu tap Program Editor. |

5.9.1 Running a service routine *Continued*



5.9.1 Running a service routine Continued

Action

Press the Start button on the FlexPendant and follow the instructions displayed on the FlexPendant.

After execution of the routine the task is stopped and the program pointer is returned to where it was before the service routine started.



CAUTION

Press Cancel Call Rout if you need to interrupt the routine before it has finished executing. Before resuming normal program flow, however, you must see to it that the robot is correctly positioned. If the interrupted routine has moved it, you will need to take actions to return the robot to its position. See *Returning the robot to the path on page 250* for further information.



WARNING

Do not execute a service routine in the middle of a move or a weld.

If you execute a service routine in the middle of a movement, the unfinished movements will be completed before the called routine is executed. This can result in an unwanted movement.

If possible, step and complete the interrupted movement before the service routine is called. Otherwise save the current movement by adding StorePath and RestoPath in the service routine. The movement will then be completed after the service routine has ended and the program starts again.

However, it is not possible to save more than one interrupted movement each time as wanted, if the service routine would be called from an error handler with StorePath and RestoPath.

Limitations

Besides service routines, **Call Routine** applies to all routines with the following criteria:

- Must be a procedure with empty parameter list. This means not a function and not a trap routine.
- Must be in the task scope, not local. If the procedure is local in a module the scope is restricted to that module, and the procedure is not visible from the task level.
- Must be in a loaded module, not installed. (Check the system parameter Installed in the type Automatic Loading of Modules in the Controller topic.)

Related information

Battery shutdown service routine on page 217.

LoadIdentify, load identification service routine on page 220.

Service Information System, ServiceInfo service routine on page 219.

Calibration Pendulum, CalPendulum service routine on page 218.

5 Programming and testing

5.9.1 Running a service routine *Continued*

For more information about StorePath and RestoPath, see Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions, and Data types.

5.9.2 Battery shutdown service routine

5.9.2 Battery shutdown service routine

When to use this service routine

For SMB units with 2-pole battery contact, it is possible to shut down the battery backup of the serial measurement board to save battery power during transportation or storage. This is the Bat_shutdown service routine.

For SMB units with 3-pole contact, this function shall not be used since the power consumption is so low that it is not needed.

Bat_shutdown

When the system is powered on again, the function is reset. The revolution counters will be lost and need an update but the calibration values will remain.

The consumption in ordinary shutdowns is then approximately 1 mA. When using sleep mode the consumption is reduced to 0.3 mA. When the battery is nearly discharged, with less then 3 Ah left, an alert is given on the FlexPendant and the battery should be replaced.



Tip

Before starting the service routine Bat_shutdown, run the robot to its calibration position. This will make it easier to recover after the sleep mode.

Related information

How to start a service routine is described in *Running a service routine on page 213*. How to update the revolution counters is described in *Updating revolution counters on page 290*.

5.9.3 Calibration Pendulum, CalPendulum service routine

5.9.3 Calibration Pendulum, CalPendulum service routine

When to use this service routine

CalPendulum is a service routine used with *Calibration Pendulum*, the standard method for calibration of ABB robots. This is the most accurate method for the standard type of calibration, and it is also the recommended method in order to achieve proper performance.

CalPendulum

The calibration equipment for *Calibration Pendulum* is delivered as a complete toolkit, including the manual *Operating manual - Calibration Pendulum*.

Related information

Running a service routine on page 213.

Calibration Pendulum is described in full in the manual *Operating* manual - Calibration Pendulum. Specific information for each robot is described in the robot's product manual.

5.9.4 Service Information System, ServiceInfo service routine

5.9.4 Service Information System, ServiceInfo service routine

When to use this service routine

ServiceInfo is a service routine based on Service Information System, SIS, a software function which simplifies maintenance of the robot system. It supervises the operating time and mode of the robot, and alerts the operator when a maintenance activity is scheduled.

ServiceInfo

Maintenance is scheduled by setting the system parameters of the type SIS Parameters. All system parameters are described in Technical reference manual - System parameters. More details about SIS is described in Operating manual - Service Information System.

Supervised functions

The following counters are available:

- · Calender time counter
- Operation time counter
- · Gearbox operation time counters

Counters are reset when maintenance has been performed.

The counter status is displayed after running the ServiceInfo routine for maintenance. Status "OK" indicates that no service interval limit has been exceeded by that counter.

Related information

Running a service routine on page 213.

Operating manual - Service Information System.

The system parameters for SIS are described in *Technical reference* manual - System parameters, chapter Motion.

5.9.5 LoadIdentify, load identification service routine

When to use this service routine

The service routine LoadIdentify is used to automatically identify the data of loads mounted on the robot. The data can also be entered manually, but this requires information that may be difficult to calculate.

To run LoadIdentify, there are a number of things to consider. These are described on the following pages. There is also information on error handling and limitations described in this chapter.



WARNING

It is important to always define the actual tool load and, when used, the payload of the robot (for example a gripped part). Incorrect definitions of load data can result in overloading of the robot mechanical structure.

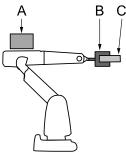
When incorrect load data is specified, it can often lead to the following consequences:

- The robot will not be used to its maximum capacity
- Impaired path accuracy including a risk of overshooting
- · Risk of overloading the mechanical structure

The controller continuously monitors the load and writes an event log if the load is higher than expected. This event log is saved and logged in the controller memory.

LoadIdentify

LoadIdentify can identify the tool load and the payload. The data that can be identified are mass, center of gravity, and moments of inertia.



en0500001535

| Α | Upper arm load |
|---|----------------|
| В | Tool load |
| С | Payload |

Before running the load identification for the payload, make sure that the tool load data is correctly defined first, for example by running LoadIdentify for the tool.

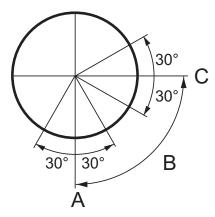
To identify the mass of B and C, axis 3 has to perform some movement. This means that to identify the mass, the upper arm load A must be known and correctly defined first.

To improve accuracy if the upper arm load A is mounted, input the known mass of B and C and choose the *known mass* method when identifying.

Configuration angles

To perform the identification the robot moves the load after a specific pattern and calculates the data. The axes that move are 3, 5 and 6. At the identification position, the motion for axis 3 is approximately ±3 degrees and for axis 5 it is approximately ±30 degrees. For axis 6 the motion is performed around two configuration points.

The optimum value for the configuration angle is either +90 degrees or -90 degrees.

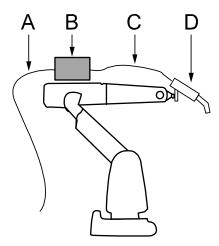


en0500001537

| Α | Configuration 1 (start position) | |
|---|----------------------------------|--|
| В | Configuration angle | |
| С | Configuration 2 | |

LoadIdentify with arm loads mounted

The best way to perform load identification is to use a robot with no arm loads mounted. If this is not possible, good accuracy can still be achieved. Consider, for example, the robot in the figure below, which has arc welding equipment mounted on it.



en0500001536

| Α | Cable 1 |
|---|---------|
| В | Load 1 |
| С | Cable 2 |
| D | Load 2 |

If we want to use load identification to find the data of load 2, the most important thing to remember is to make sure that the upper arm load is correctly defined, in particular its mass and center of gravity along the robot arm. The arm load includes everything that is mounted on the robot, except tool load and payload. In the figure above, cable 1, cable 2, and load 1 are included in the arm load, the total weight and center of gravity have to be calculated.

When performing the load identification, cable 2 should be disconnected since it will otherwise put an extra force on load 2. When identifying load 2 with such a force present, the result may differ considerably from the correct load. Ideally, cable 2 should be disconnected from load 2 and fastened on the upper arm. If this is not possible, the cable can also be disconnected at load 1 and fastened to the upper arm in such a way that the resulting force on load 2 is minimized.

Prerequisites for tool loads

Before running the LoadIdentify service routine for a tool load, make sure that:

- The tool is selected in the jogging menu.
- · The tool is correctly mounted.
- · Axis 6 is close to horizontal.
- · The upper arm load is defined, if the tool mass is to be identified.
- The axes 3, 5, and 6 are not close to their corresponding working range limits.
- The speed is set to 100%.

· The system is in manual mode.

Note that LoadIdentify cannot be used for tool0.

Prerequisites for payloads

Before running the LoadIdentify service routine for a payload, make sure that:

- The tool and payload are correctly mounted.
- · Axis 6 is close to horizontal.
- · The tool load is known (run LoadIdentify for the tool first).
- · The upper arm load is defined, if the payload mass is to be identified.
- When using a moving TCP, the tool must be calibrated (TCP).
- When using a stationary TCP, the corresponding work object must be calibrated (user frame and object frame).
- The axes 3, 5, and 6 are not close to their corresponding working range limits.
- The speed is set to 100%.
- · The system is in manual mode.

Note that LoadIdentify cannot be used for load0.

Running LoadIdentify

To start the load identification service routine you must have an active program in manual mode and the tool and payload that you want to identify must be defined and active in the **Jogging** window.



Tip

Always run load identification with cold motors (no warm-up).

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Start LoadIdentify from the Program Editor . Press the three-position enabling device and then press the Start button on the FlexPendant. | How to start service routines is described in <i>Running a service routine on page 213</i> . |
| 2 | Tap OK to confirm that current path will be cleared and that the program pointer will be lost. | Tap Cancel and then Cancel Call Rout to quit the service routine without loosing the program pointer. |
| 3 | Tap Tool or Payload . | |
| 4 | Tap OK to confirm that the correct tool and/or payload is active in the jogging menu and that the tool load/payload is correctly mounted. | If it is not correct, release the three-position enabling device and select the correct tool/payload in the Jogging menu. Then return to Load-Identify, press the three-position enabling device, and press Start. Tap Retry and confirm that the new tool/payload is correct. |
| 5 | When identifying tool loads, confirm that the tool is active. When identifying payloads, confirm that the payload's tool is active and calibrated. | See step 4. |

| | Action | Information |
|----|---|---|
| 6 | When identifying payloads with stationary TCP, confirm that the correct work object is active and (preferably) calibrated. If it is correct, tap OK to confirm. | See step 4. |
| 7 | Select identification method. If you select the method where the mass is assumed to be known, remember that the tool/payload that you use must have the correct mass defined. Tap OK to confirm. | |
| 8 | Select configuration angle. The optimum is +90 or -90 degrees. If this is impossible, tap Other and set the angle. The minimum is +30 or -30 degrees. | |
| 9 | If the robot is not in a correct position for load identifica- tion, you will be asked to jog one or more axes roughly to a specified position. When you have done this tap OK to confirm. If the robot is still not in a correct position for load identi- fication, the robot will slowly move to the correct position. Press Move to start the movement. | than 10 degrees from pro- |
| 10 | The robot can go through the load identification movements slowly before performing the load identification (slow test). Tap Yes if you want a slow test and No to proceed to the identification. | This is useful for ensuring that the robot will not hit anything during the identification. However, this will take a lot longer time. |
| | | Note |
| | | If the load identification is planned to be run in manual full speed, then the slow test is required before the actual measurement can start. |
| 11 | The setup for load identification is now complete. To start the motion, switch to Automatic mode and Motors On. Then tap Move to start the load identification movements. | |
| 12 | When the identification is finished, switch back to manual mode, press the three-position enabling device and the Start button. Tap OK to confirm. | |
| 13 | The result of the load identification is now presented on the FlexPendant. | See Load diagram check on page 224. |
| | For robots that support the <i>Load diagram check</i> functionality, there is a message if the load is approved or not, and an Analyze button to view more information. | |
| 14 | Tap Yes to update the selected tool or payload with the identified parameters. | |
| | Tap No to exit LoadIdentify without saving the parameters. | |

Load diagram check

For robots that support the *Load diagram check* functionality, the combination of the arm load, tool and payload, will be assessed against the load diagram. The ratings of total handling weight as well as of the center of gravity distance to the load diagram in Z and L directions will be provided both for wrist-up and wrist-down configurations.

There is a message if the load is approved or not, and an **Analyze** button to view more information.

- · Load approved
- · Load not approved
- · Load approved only with wrist down

Running LoadIdentify with ModalPayLoadMode deactivated

When the system parameter ModalPayLoadMode is deactivated, set to 0, LoadIdentify will identify the tool load and the total load. It is no longer possible to define the payload.

With ModalPayLoadMode deactivated it is possible to use the \TLoad argument in movement instructions. The \TLoad argument describes the total load used in the movement. The total load is the tool load together with the payload that the tool is carrying. If the \TLoad argument is used, then the loaddata in the current tooldata is not considered. For more information about ModalPayLoadMode in movement instructions, see the section MoveL in *Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types*.

To start the load identification service routine you must have an active program in manual mode and the tool and payload that you want to identify must be defined and active in the **Jogging** window.



Tip

Always run load identification with cold motors (no warm-up).

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Start LoadIdentify from the Program Editor . Press the three-position enabling device and then press the Start button on the FlexPendant. | How to start service routines is described in <i>Running a service routine on page 213</i> . |
| 2 | Tap OK to confirm that current path will be cleared and that the program pointer will be lost. | Tap Cancel and then Cancel Call Rout to quit the service routine without loosing the program pointer. |
| 3 | Tap OK to continue with the LoadIdentify process. | The selection to update the tool load or the total load is done at a later stage. |
| 4 | Tap OK to confirm that the correct tool and/or total load is active in the jogging menu and that the tool load/total load is correctly mounted. | |
| 5 | When identifying tool loads, confirm that the tool is active. | See step 4. |

| | Action | Information |
|----|---|---|
| 6 | Select identification method. If you select the method where the mass is assumed to be known, remember that the tool/total load that you use must have the correct mass defined. Tap OK to confirm. | |
| 7 | Select configuration angle. The optimum is +90 or -90 degrees. If this is impossible, tap Other and set the angle. The minimum is +30 or -30 degrees. | |
| 8 | If the robot is not in correct position for load identification, you are asked to jog one or more axes roughly to a specified position. When you have done this tap OK to confirm. If the robot is still not in a correct position for load identi- | |
| | fication, the robot will slowly move to the correct position. Press Move to start the movement. | |
| 9 | The robot can go through the load identification movements slowly before performing the load identification (slow test). Tap Yes if you want a slow test and No to proceed to the identification. | This is useful for ensuring that the robot will not hit anything during the identification. However, this will take a lot longer time. |
| | | Note |
| | | If the load identification is planned to be run in manual full speed, then the slow test is required before the actual measurement can start. |
| 10 | The setup for load identification is now complete. To start the motion, switch to Automatic mode and Motors On. Then tap Move to start the load identification movements. | |
| 11 | When the identification is finished, switch back to manual mode, press the three-position enabling device and the Start button. Tap OK to confirm. | |
| 12 | The result of the load identification is now presented on the FlexPendant. Tap Tool if you want to update the selected tool, tap Loaddata if you want to update the total load, or tap No if you want to quit without saving. | |
| 13 | If Loaddata is selected it is possible to update the total load to either an existing or a new loaddata persistent variable. | |

Error handling

If the three-position enabling device is released during the load identification (before the movements start), the routine can always be restarted by pressing the three-position enabling device again and then pressing the Start button.

If an error should occur during the load identification movements, the routine must be restarted from the beginning. This is done automatically by pressing Start after confirming the error. To interrupt and leave the load identification procedure, tap **Cancel Call Routine** in the program editor's debug menu.

Limitations for LoadIdentify

Only tool loads and payloads can be identified with LoadIdentify. Thus arm loads cannot be identified.

If the load identification movements are interrupted by any kind of stop (program stop, emergency stop, etc.), the load identification must be restarted from the beginning. Confirm the error and press **Start** to automatically restart.

If the robot is stopped on a path with program stop and load identification is performed at the stop point, the path will be cleared. This means that no regain movement will be performed to return the robot back to the path.

The load identification ends with an EXIT instruction. That means that the program pointer is lost and must be set to main before starting any program execution.



Tip

The tool and/or payload data can be set manually if the load is small (10% or less of the maximum load) or symmetrical, for example if the tool load is symmetrical around axis 6.



Tip

If the mass of the tool or payload is unknown, the service routine LoadIdentify can in some cases identify a 0 kg mass. If the load is very small compared to the maximum load for the robot, then a 0 kg mass can be ok. Otherwise, try the following to identify the mass.

- Check that the arm loads are correctly defined and redo the identification.
- Find the weight of the load in some other way and perform a load identification with known mass to remove the dependency on arm loads.

LoadIdentify for 4-axis robots

When running LoadIdentify on a robot with 4 instead of 6 axes, there are some differences. In this description of the differences the robot type is assumed to be similar to IRB 260, IRB 460, IRB 660, or IRB 760.

The main differences are:

- Axes 1, 3, and 6 are used.
- · Because axis 1 is used, the resulting movements can be large.
- · Not all load parameters can be identified.

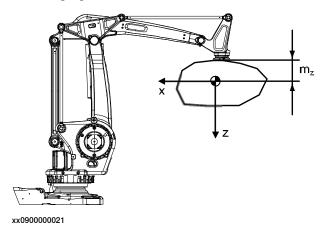
Axis 1 will move approximately ± 23 degrees from its current position. Therefore, the load can move a large distance during the identification. Axes 3 and 6 will move as for 6-axis robots. The configuration angle for axis 6 works exactly as for 6-axis robots.

Because there is not 6 axes, a 4-axis robot cannot identify all parameters of the load. The following parameters cannot be identified:

- I_x The inertia around the x-axis.
- I_v The inertia around the y-axis.

• m_z - The z-coordinate for the center of mass.

However, for this type of robot the above parameters have negligible effect on the motion performance. See the definition of the load coordinate system in the following figure.



Related information

It is also possible to include LoadIdentify in a program by using RAPID instructions. See LoadID in *Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types*.

How to enter the data manually is described in *Editing the tool data on page 182*, and *Editing the payload data on page 200*.

The product manual for the robot contain information on how and where to mount the loads.

Load identification for positioners is done with the service routine ManLoadIdentify, see *Product manual - IRBP /D2009*.

How to define the system parameters for arm loads is described in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

5.9.6 Brake check

When to use this service routine

Brake check is a function that verifies that the mechanical brakes work correctly.

Running brake check

There are two ways of initiating a brake check:

- Call the service routine BrakeCheck from the FlexPendant. The controller must be in manual mode.
- Call the procedure BrakeCheck from the RAPID program.

Prerequisites for brake check

- The robot and all additional axes must be moved to a safe and relaxed position (away from people, equipment and not too much stretched) before performing a brake check. Normally the robot moves only a few centimeters during the brake check.
- Move the robot to a stop point before performing a brake check.
- A brake check can only be performed at normal execution level (not from a trap routine, error handler, event routine or store path level).
- Brakes are tested in consecutive order and each test takes 10-15 seconds.
- It is possible to exclude individual axes from the brake check.

Interrupted brake check

It is not recommended, but it is possible to stop the execution while running a brake check.

If the brake check is interrupted, it will be resumed when the program execution starts again. The brake check can be resumed up to 3 times.

Brake maintenance

Brake maintenance is a feature in the brake check functionality.

The BrakeCheck routine automatically detects if maintenance of the mechanical brakes is needed and activates the *Brake maintenance* functionality during execution. *Brake maintenance* applies the brake and turns the motor shaft 1 radian five times, which gives a movement of the robot arm of less than 1 degree.

There are event logs that tell if *Brake maintenance* is needed, and if it has been run.

For more information see parameter *Brake Maintenance*, type *General Rapid*, topic *Controller*, in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

Event logs

When BrakeCheck is executed, the following event logs will be shown:

| Event log | Title |
|-----------|---------------------|
| 10272 | Brake Check Done |
| 10273 | Brake Check Started |

5.9.6 Brake check Continued

If there is a problem with one or several mechanical brakes, an event log that is describing which mechanical unit and which axis that has bad brakes will be shown:

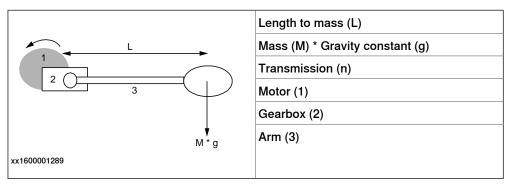
| Event log | Title |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| 37234 | Brake Performance Warning |
| 37235 | Brake Performance Error |

Brake check on additional axes

To be able to run brake check on additional axes, the parameter *Max Static Arm Torque* (in topic *Motion* and type *Brake*) needs to be calculated for the additional axis and entered into the configuration. Brake check uses this value when testing the brake at error-level.

The parameter should be the maximum static torque that the brake needs to withstand when the additional axis is positioned in maximum gravity. The following formula should be used:

Max Static Arm Torque = (M*L*g)/n



To calculate the parameter for an axis that has no gravity, for example a track, the below formula may be used:

Max Static Arm Torque = Tbrake min/1.35

Tbrake min for ABB motor units can be found in the product specification for the specific motor unit, see *Product specification - Motor Units and Gear Units*.

For more information about parameter *Max Static Arm Torque*, see topic *Motion*, type *Brake* in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.



Note

Note that the calculated value should be entered in [Nm] and calculated to the motor side.

5.9.6.1 Description of the I/O setup

5.9.6.1 Description of the I/O setup

Signal configuration

It is possible to configure digital output signals that reflect the status of the mechanical brakes in an open RAPID module. The digital output signals that can be configured are OK, WARNING, ERROR, and ACT (brake check active) for each drive module.

The signal configuration should be done in the RAPID module *BC_config_IO.sys*, see *Description of the I/O setup on page 231*.

The file *BC_config_IO.sys* can be found in directory *hd0a\<active* system>\PRODUCTS\RobotWare_6.0x.xxxx\system, and must then be copied to the *HOME* directory of the active system.



Note

Remember to update the I/O configuration with the digital output signals.

In a MultiMove system you need to define an OK, WARNING, ERROR, and ACT digital output signals for each drive module.



Note

If the signals should keep their values after a power fail, the power fail settings in the system parameters must also be updated, see *Description of the I/O setup on page 231*.

Description of the BC_config_IO module

```
MODULE BC_config_IO(SYSMODULE,NOVIEW)
  PROC BC_config_IO_proc(VAR string user_io_names{*,*})
    !TPWrite "BC_config_IO_proc";
    ! Define your own signals. The signal
    ! names must be signals defined in EIO.cfg
    ! If 1 drive module
    user_io_names{1, 1}:="BCACT1";
    user_io_names\{1, 2\}:="BCOK1";
    user_io_names{1, 3}:="BCWAR1";
    user_io_names{1, 4}:="BCERR1";
    ! If 2 drive modules
    !user_io_names{2, 1}:="BCACT2";
    !user_io_names{2, 2}:="BCOK2";
    !user_io_names{2, 3}:="BCWAR2";
    !user_io_names{2, 4}:="BCERR2";
    ! If 3 drive modules
    !user io names{3, 1}:="BCACT3";
    !user_io_names{3, 2}:="BCOK3";
    !user_io_names{3, 3}:="BCWAR3";
```

5.9.6.1 Description of the I/O setup *Continued*

```
!user_io_names{3, 4}:="BCERR3";
! If 4 drive modules
!user_io_names{4, 1}:="BCACT4";
!user_io_names{4, 2}:="BCOK4";
!user_io_names{4, 3}:="BCWAR4";
!user_io_names{4, 4}:="BCERR4";
ENDPROC
ENDMODULE
```

Description of the EIO.cfg file

```
#
EIO:CFG_1.0:6:1::
...

#
EIO_SIGNAL:

-Name "BCACT1" -SignalType "DO"

-Name "BCOK1" -SignalType "DO"

-Name "BCWAR1" -SignalType "DO"

-Name "BCERR1" -SignalType "DO"
```

5.9.6.2 Brake check signal description

5.9.6.2 Brake check signal description

Introduction

Description of different signal states for brake check in the BrakeCheck routine. The signal names are according to Description of the I/O setup on page 231.

Timing sequence for brake check signals

Description of which signals are set at different times during the BrakeCheck execution.

Beginning of brake check

The following signals are set in the beginning of the BrakeCheck execution.

| Signal | Set to |
|--------|--------|
| ВСОК | 0 |
| BCACT | 1 |
| BCERR | 0 |
| BCWAR | 0 |

End of brake check

The following signals are set in the end of the BrakeCheck execution.

| Signal | BrakeCheck test OK Set to | BrakeCheck test WARNING Set to | BrakeCheck test ER- ROR Set to |
|--------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ВСОК | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| BCERR | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| BCWAR | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| BCACT | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Program Pointer moved to Main after interrupted brake check

When the program pointer is moved to Main after an interrupted BrakeCheck execution, the following signals are set.

| Signal | Set to |
|--------|--------|
| ВСОК | 0 |
| BCACT | 0 |

During the first brake check test

| Signal | Signal state |
|--------|--------------|
| всок | 0 |
| BCERR | 0 |
| BCWAR | 0 |
| BCACT | 1 |

5 Programming and testing

5.9.6.2 Brake check signal description *Continued*

Interrupted brake check test, program pointer still in BrakeCheck routine

| Signal | Signal state |
|--------|--------------|
| всок | 0 |
| BCERR | 0 |
| BCWAR | 0 |
| BCACT | 1 |

Interrupted brake check test, program pointer moved from BrakeCheck routine

| Signal | Signal state |
|--------|--------------|
| всок | 0 |
| BCERR | 0 |
| BCWAR | 0 |
| BCACT | 0 |

5.9.6.3 Configure system parameters

5.9.6.3 Configure system parameters

About the system parameters

The configuration of system parameters required for a robot system should be made before running the brake check.



Note

It is required to restart the IRC5 controller after changing system parameters.

Type Mechanical Unit

All mechanical units for additional axes that shall be supervised must have the parameters *Activate at Start Up* and *Deactivation Forbidden* set to On. (Supervised mechanical units must always be active.)

Type Arm

If an axis should be excluded from brake check, set the parameter *Deactivate Cyclic Brake Check for axis* to On.

Type Brake

If brake check is executed on an additional axis, a lowest safe brake torque must be defined. A 5% margin is added during the test for setting the fail limit. The parameter used is *Max Static Arm Torque* defined in Nm on motor side. A warning limit is set with a higher torque value (depending on the brake).



6 Running in production

6.1 Basic procedures

6.1.1 Starting programs

Starting programs

Use this procedure to start a program for the first time or to continue running a program that has been stopped.

If your robot system has the option *Multitasking* installed, also see *Using multitasking programs on page 241*.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Check that all necessary preparations are done to the robot and in the robot cell and that no obstacles exist within the robot work area. | |
| 2 | Make sure no personnel are inside the robot cell. | |
| 3 | Select operating mode on the controller with the mode switch. | B C D E |
| 4 | Press the Motors on button on the controller to activate the robot. | |
| 5 | Is a program loaded? If yes, proceed to the next step. If no, load a program. | How to load programs is described in section <i>Handling of programs on page 148</i> . |
| 6 | If needed, select run mode and speed using the Quickset menu. | See Quickset menu, Run Mode on page 85 and Quickset menu, Speed on page 87. |

6.1.1 Starting programs

Continued

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 7 | In Auto mode: 1 Press the Start button on the Flex-Pendant to start the program. In manual mode: 1 Select start mode. 2 Press and hold the three-position enabling device. 3 Press the Start button on the Flex-Pendant to start the program. | The button is shown in section <i>Hard buttons on page 39</i> . How to select start mode is detailed in section <i>Using the hold-to-run function on page 207</i> . |
| 8 | Is the Regain Request dialog box displayed? If yes, return the robot to the path using a suitable method. If no, proceed. | Returning the robot to the path is described in section Returning the robot to the path on page 250. |
| 9 | If the Cursor does not coincide with PP dialog box is displayed then tap PP or Cursor to select from where the program should start. Then press the Start button again. | This dialog box is only displayed if the system parameters of type Warning at start are defined. See Technical reference manual - System parameters. |

Continue running after the program is changed

You can always continue a program even if it has been changed.

In automatic mode, a warning dialog may appear to avoid restarting the program if the consequences are unknown.

| If you | then tap |
|---|----------|
| Are sure the changes you have made are not in conflict with the current robot position and that the program can continue without danger to equipment or personnel | Yes |
| Are unsure of the consequences your changes might have and want to investigate further | No |

Restart from the beginning

A program can be restarted from the **Production Window** or the **Program Editor**.

PP to Main from the **Production Window** will reset the program pointer to the production entry in all normal tasks, including tasks deactivated in the task selection panel.

PP to Main from the **Program Editor** will reset the program pointer to the production entry in the specified task only, even if the task is deactivated in the task selection panel.

Use this procedure to restart a program from the **Production Window**.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Production Window. |
| 2 | Tap PP to Main. |
| 3 | Start the program by pressing the Start button on the FlexPendant. |

Use this procedure to restart a program from the Program Editor.

| | Action |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |

6.1.1 Starting programs Continued

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 2 | Tap Debug. |
| 3 | Tap PP to Main. |
| 4 | Start the program by pressing the Start button on the FlexPendant. |

Limitations

Only one program at a time can be executed, unless your system has the *Multitasking* option. If so several programs can be executed simultaneously. See how to select tasks in *Quickset menu*, *Tasks on page 88*.

If the robot system encounters program code errors while the program is running, it will stop the program and the error is logged in the event log.

6.1.2 Stopping programs

6.1.2 Stopping programs

Stopping programs

If your robot system has the *Multitasking* option installed, see *Using multitasking* programs on page 241.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Check that the ongoing operation is in such a state that it can be interrupted. |
| 2 | Make sure it is safe to stop the program. |
| 3 | Press the Stop button on the hardware button set of the jogging device. |



DANGER

Do not use the **Stop** button in an emergency. Use the emergency stop button. Stopping a program with the **Stop** button does not mean that the robot will stop moving immediately.

Stopping execution when using hold-to-run or step-by-step execution

When using hold-to-run or step-by-step execution, execution can be stopped according to the following.

| Mode | Action | Information |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| Operation with hold-to-run | Release the Start button | The hold-to-run function is described in section <i>What is a FlexPendant? on page 37</i> . |
| Step-by-step mode | The robot will stop after executing each instruction. Execute the next instruction by pressing the Forward button again. | The STOP and Forward button are described in section What is a FlexPendant? on page 37. If you press the STOP button while executing a move instruction, the robot will stop without completing the move. |

6.1.3 Using multitasking programs

6.1.3 Using multitasking programs

Overview

In a system with the option *Multitasking* installed, you may have one or several programs running in parallel, for instance in a *MultiMove* cell with more than one robot where each robot has its own task and program (multitasking).

For general information on program handling, see *Handling of programs on page 148*. Multitasking is described in *Application manual - Controller software IRC5*.

Manually set up tasks

Tasks need to be set up in order to run as planned. Normally, all tasks are set up on delivery. Setting up tasks is done by defining system parameters of the type *Controller*. See section *Technical reference manual - System parameters* for information about the parameters.

You need detailed information to set up tasks manually. Please read your plant or cell documentation for details.

How tasks are run

Tasks may be defined as Normal, Static, or Semistatic. Static and Semistatic tasks are automatically started as soon as a program is loaded into that task.

Normal tasks are started when you press the **Start** button of the FlexPendant, and stopped when you press the **Stop** button.

To be able to step, start and stop a Static or Semistatic task: set **Task Panel Settings** to **All tasks** and activate the task using the **Quickset** menu. See *Application manual - Controller software IRC5*, section *Multitasking*.

The concepts of Static, Semistatic, and Normal are described in *Technical reference* manual - System parameters, type *Tasks*.

Load, run, and stop multitasking programs

This section describes how to load, run, and stop multitasking programs.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Make sure there is more than one task set up. This is done using system parameters, see <i>Technical reference manual - System parameters</i> . |
| 2 | Load programs to respective task using the Program Editor or the Production Window , this is described in section <i>Loading an existing program on page 149</i> . |
| 3 | If one or more task should be disabled, go to the Quickset menu to do this. See section Quickset menu, Tasks on page 88. Deselecting tasks can only be done in manual mode. When switching to automatic mode, an alert box will appear warning that not all tasks are selected to run. |
| 4 | Start program execution by pressing the start button. All active tasks are started. |
| 5 | Stop program execution by pressing the stop button. All active tasks are stopped. |

6.1.3 Using multitasking programs Continued

How to load a program to a task

This section describes how to load a program to a task in a multitasking system. It is assumed that the tasks have been configured.

Load a program from the Production Window

| | Action |
|----|---|
| 1. | On the ABB menu, tap Production Window. |
| 2. | Tap the task into which you want to load a program. |
| 3. | Tap Load Program |
| | If you want to open a program in another folder, locate and open that folder. See description in <i>FlexPendant Explorer on page 56</i> . |
| | The file dialog box appears. |
| 4. | Tap the program you want to load followed by OK. |

Load a program from the Program Editor

| | Action |
|----|---|
| 1. | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. |
| 2. | Tap Tasks and Programs. |
| 3. | Tap the task into which you want to load a program. |
| 4. | On the File menu, tap Load Program If you want to open a program in another folder, locate and open that folder. See de- |
| | scription in <i>FlexPendant Explorer on page 56</i> . The file dialog box appears. |
| 5. | Tap the program you want to load followed by OK. |
| 6. | Tap Close to close the Program Editor. |

Viewing multitasking programs

In the **Production Window**, there is one tab for each task. To switch between viewing the different tasks, tap on the tabs.

To edit several tasks in parallel, open one **Program Editor** for each task. To edit static and semistatic tasks, see *Application manual - Controller software IRC5*, section *Multitasking*.

6.1.4 Using motion supervision and non motion execution

Motion supervision

The controller software has functionality aiming at reducing collision impact forces on the robot. This helps protecting the robot and external equipment from severe damage if a collision occurs.

Motion supervision during program execution is by default always active, regardless which options are installed in the controller. When a collision is detected, the robot will immediately stop and relieve the residual forces by moving in reversed direction a short distance along its path. The program execution will stop with an error message. The robot remains in the state Motors on so that program execution can be resumed after the collision error message has been acknowledged.

Moreover, there is a software option called *Collision Detection*, which has extra features such as supervision during jogging. To find out if your system has this option installed, tap **System Info** on the ABB menu. Expand the node *System Properties* and tap *Options* under *Control Module*.

Functions in RobotWare base

Description of functions in RobotWare base:

- Path Supervision in automatic and manual full speed mode used to prevent mechanical damage due to the robot running into an obstacle during program execution.
- Non motion execution used to run a program without robot motion.

Functions in Collision Detection

A RobotWare system with Collision Detection has additional functionality:

- Path Supervision in manual mode and the possibility to tune supervision in all modes.
- Jog Supervision used to prevent mechanical damage to the robot during jogging.
- RAPID instruction MotionSup used to activate/deactivate collision detection and to tune sensitivity during program execution.



Note

All motion supervision must be set for each task separately.

6.1.4 Using motion supervision and non motion execution *Continued*

Editing motion supervision settings

This section describes how to modify settings for motion supervision.

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu tap Control Panel and then Supervision. | |
| 2 | Tap the Task list and select a task. | If you have more than one task, you need to set the desired values for each task separately. |
| 3 | Tap OFF/ON to remove or activate path supervision. Tap -/+ to adjust sensitivity. Note If the option Collision Detection is not installed, sensitivity setting will have no effect. path supervision affects only the robot in auto and manual full speed mode. | Sensitivity can be set between 0 and 300. If it is set lower than 80, however, the robot may stop due to internal drag. Note You can modify the sensitivity of Path supervision. For more information, see Setting sensitivity of Motion Supervision on page 245. |
| 4 | Tap OFF/ON to remove or activate jog supervision. Tap the -/+ to adjust sensitivity. Note If the option Collision Detection is not installed, these settings will have no effect. | Sensitivity can be set between 0 and 300. If it is set lower than 80, however, the robot may stop due to internal drag. Note You can modify the sensitivity of Path supervision. For more information, see Setting sensitivity of Motion Supervision on page 245. |
| 5 | Under Execution Settings, tap OFF/ON to deactivate or activate non motion execution. This is a separate function, not a part of motion supervision. | See <i>Non motion execution on page 245</i> for information about this function. |

6.1.4 Using motion supervision and non motion execution Continued

Setting sensitivity of Motion Supervision

Use the following procedure to set the sensitivity of *Path Supervision* and *Jog Supervision*.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Control Panel and then Configuration. | |
| 2 | Tap Topics and select Motion. | |
| 3 | Select the type Motion Supervision and tap. | |
| 4 | Select one from the list and tap Edit. | For example: rob1 |
| 5 | Select Path Collision Detection Level, tap twice and set a value. | The maximum value that can be set is 500. |
| 6 | Click OK. | |
| 7 | Select Jog Collision Detection Level, tap twice and set a value. | The maximum value that can be set is 500 |
| 8 | Click OK. | |

Non motion execution

Non motion execution enables you to run a RAPID program without robot motion. All other functions work normally; current cycle times, I/O, TCP speed calculation etcetera.

Non motion execution can be used for program debugging or cycle time evaluation. It also represents a solution if you need to measure for example glue or paint consumption during a cycle.

When non motion execution is activated it can be executed in:

- · manual mode
- manual full speed mode
- · auto mode

Cycle times will be simulated according to the selected mode.



Note

Non motion execution can only be activated when the system is in Motors Off state.



CAUTION

Non motion execution is reset after a reboot. If you intend to run the program in non motion mode, do not restart without checking the status of **Non motion execution**. Starting the program incorrectly may cause serious injury or death, or damage the robot or other equipment.

Related information

For more information on *Collision Detection*, see *Application manual - Controller* software IRC5.

6.1.5 Using the hot plug option

6.1.5 Using the hot plug option

Hot plug option

The hot plug option makes it possible to:

- Disconnect the jogging device from a system in automatic mode and thereby run the system without a jogging device connected.
- Temporarily connect and operate a jogging device without interrupting the application running on the system.



WARNING

Pressing the hot plug button disables the emergency stop button on the FlexPendant. Only press the hot plug button while connecting or disconnecting the FlexPendant.



WARNING

A disconnected FlexPendant must always be stored separated from the IRC5 controller!

Connect and disconnect the FlexPendant using the hot plug button

The following procedure describes how to connect or disconnect the FlexPendant on a system in automatic mode using the hot plug button option.



Note

Do not switch to manual mode (or manual full speed mode) while the system is running without the FlexPendant. The FlexPendant must be connected when you switch to automatic mode otherwise you cannot confirm the mode change.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Make sure that the system is in automatic mode. | |
| 2 | Press and hold the hot plug button. | A red lamp inside the button indicates when pressed. |

6.1.5 Using the hot plug option Continued

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | Keep pressing the hot plug button and at the same time, switch the jumper plug with the FlexPendant plug. | A O |
| | | В |
| | | xx0600002784 |
| | | A: Hot plug button |
| | | B: FlexPendant connector |
| | | |
| | | xx0600002796 |
| | | Jumper plug |
| 4 | Release the hot plug button. | Make sure that the button is not stuck in the actuated position since this disables the FlexPendant emergency stop button. |



Note

When the FlexPendant is disconnected, the jumper plug must be connected in its place.



Note

If the hot plug button is released while neither the jumper plug, nor the FlexPendant is connected, the robot movements will be stopped since the emergency stop chains are opened.

Limitations for messages on the FlexPendant

When using the hot plug option, the following limitations apply to messages on the FlexPendant:

Operator messages

Some applications may require input from the operator by using the FlexPendant (e.g. applications using RAPID instructions <code>TPReadNum</code>, <code>UIMsgBox</code>, etc.). If the application encounters such an operator message, program execution will wait. After connecting the FlexPendant you must then stop and start the program execution to be able to see and respond to these messages. They are not displayed automatically by just connecting the FlexPendant.

If possible, avoid using these types of instructions when programming systems that are using the hot plug button option.

6 Running in production

6.1.5 Using the hot plug option *Continued*

Event log messages

When connecting the FlexPendant, event log messages can be viewed also for the period when the FlexPendant was disconnected, since these are stored on the controller.

6.2.1 General procedure when trouble shooting

6.2 Trouble shooting and error recovery

6.2.1 General procedure when trouble shooting

Types of faults

Faults occurring in the robot system may be of two categories:

- Faults detected by the built-in diagnostics system. These faults are described in section Event log messages in Operating manual - Trouble shooting IRC5.
- Faults NOT detected by the built-in diagnostics system. These faults are described in section Other types of faults in Operating manual - Trouble shooting IRC5.

Faults causing error message on the FlexPendant

The control system is supplied with diagnostic software to facilitate trouble shooting and to reduce downtime. Any errors detected by the diagnostics are displayed in plain language with a code number on the FlexPendant.

All system and error messages are logged in a common log in which the last 150 messages are saved. The log can be accessed from the Status bar on the FlexPendant.

To facilitate trouble shooting, it is important that some basic principles are followed. These are specified in *Trouble shooting principles* in *Operating manual - Trouble shooting IRC5*.

Faults NOT causing error messages on the FlexPendant

These faults are not detected by the diagnostic system and are handled in other ways. The way the symptom of the fault is observed greatly influences the type of fault. Instructions are given in section *Other types of faults* in *Operating manual - Trouble shooting IRC5*.

To trouble shoot faults NOT causing error messages on the FlexPendant, follow steps 3 and 4 in the procedure above.

Other possible actions

Some errors may require running a service routine. See section *Service routines* on page 213.

6.2.2 Returning the robot to the path

6.2.2 Returning the robot to the path

About paths and return regions

While a program is running, the robot or additional axis is considered to be *on path*, which means that it follows the desired sequence of positions.

If you stop the program the robot is still on path, unless you change its position. It is then considered to be *off path*. If the robot is stopped by an emergency or safety stop it may also be off path.

If the stopped robot is within the *path return region* you can start the program again, and the robot will return to the path and continue program execution.

Note that there is no way to predict the exact return movement for the robot.



diT

The path return region is set with system parameters. This is described in the *Technical reference manual - System parameters*, type *Path Return Region*.

Returning to path

Turning off the power to the robot motors often results in the robot slipping from its programmed path. This may occur after an uncontrolled emergency or safety stop. The allowed slip distance is configured with system parameters. The distance can be different depending on operating mode.

If the robot is not within the configured allowed distance, you may choose to let the robot return to the programmed path or continue to the next programmed point in the path. Then the program execution continues automatically in programmed speed.

For more information see *Technical reference manual - System parameters*, section *Topic Controller - Type Path Return Region*.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Make sure there are no obstacles blocking the way and that payload and work objects are properly placed. |
| 2 | If necessary, put the system in automatic mode and press the Motors on button on the controller to activate the robot motors. |
| 3 | Press the Start button on the FlexPendant to continue execution from where it stopped. One of these things will happen: |
| | The robot or axis will slowly return to the path and execution will continue. |
| | The Regain Request dialog will be displayed. |
| 4 | If the Regain Request dialog is displayed, select the proper action. |

Select action

| If you | then tap |
|---|----------|
| want to return to the path and continue the program | Yes |
| want to return to the next target position and continue the program | No |

6.2.2 Returning the robot to the path *Continued*

| If you | then tap |
|------------------------------------|----------|
| don't want to continue the program | Cancel |

6.2.3 Running RAPID program with uncalibrated mechanical unit

6.2.3 Running RAPID program with uncalibrated mechanical unit

When is this useful?

If a servo gun is damaged or uncalibrated, you may want to run a service routine. In order to run the service routine (or any RAPID code), even though an additional axis is uncalibrated, the steps in this description must be followed.

How to get the program started

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | Set the system parameter <i>Active at Start Up</i> (in type <i>Mechanical Unit</i> , topic <i>Motion</i>) to No. |
| | Set the system parameter <i>Disconnect at Deactivate</i> (in type <i>Measurement Channel</i> , topic <i>Motion</i>) to Yes. |
| 2 | If any of the system parameter values are changed, restart the controller. |
| 3 | Deactivate the uncalibrated mechanical unit. |
| 4 | Move the program pointer to Main (otherwise the mechanical unit will be automatically activated). |
| 5 | Run the service routine or other RAPID code. |

6.3 Operating modes

6.3.1 Present operating mode

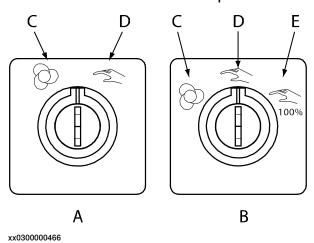
Overview

Check the position of the controller's mode switch or the status bar of the FlexPendant.

Operational mode changes are also logged in the event log.

The mode switch

The mode switch should be in the position as illustrated:

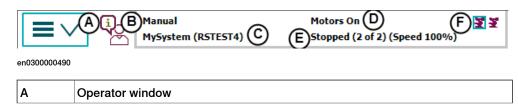


| Α | Two position mode switch | |
|---|----------------------------|--|
| В | Three position mode switch | |
| С | Automatic mode | |
| D | Manual reduced speed mode | |
| E | Manual full speed mode | |

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | To switch from manual to automatic mode | detailed in Switching from manual to automatic mode on page 255. |
| 2 | To switch from automatic to manual mode | detailed in Switching from automatic to manual mode on page 257. |

Viewing present mode on the FlexPendant

On the FlexPendant, you can view the present operating mode in the status bar. An example of the status bar is shown below:



6 Running in production

6.3.1 Present operating mode *Continued*

| В | Operating mode |
|---|---|
| С | Active system |
| D | Controller state |
| E | Program state |
| F | Mechanical units, active is highlighted |

Related information

About the automatic mode on page 204 About the manual mode on page 205

6.3.2 Switching from manual to automatic mode

6.3.2 Switching from manual to automatic mode

When should I put the system in automatic mode?

Put the system in automatic mode when you have a process application or a RAPID program that is ready to be run in production.



DANGER

When put in automatic mode the robot may move without warning.

Make sure no personnel are in safeguarded space before you change operating mode.

Switching from manual to automatic mode

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Set the mode switch in the automatic position. A mode change dialog is displayed. | xx0300000467 |
| 2 | If any debug settings have been changed, a dialog informs about the changes and if these values will be reset. Tap Acknowledge . | If these values are reset or not is defined by system parameters in the type <i>Auto Condition Reset</i> in the topic <i>Controller</i> . |
| 3 | Tap OK to close the dialog. | |
| | If you change the switch back to manual mode the dialog will be closed automatically. | |
| 4 | Did the system change mode without errors? If yes, then resume or start the process application or RAPID program. If no, stop and troubleshoot the problem. | How to start programs is described in <i>Starting programs on page 237</i> . |



Note

If your specific system uses a distributed operator's panel, controls and indicators may not be placed exactly as described in this manual. Consult your plant or cell documentation for details.

Controls and indicators do however look and function the same way.

When can I start using the robot system?

As long as the mode change dialog is displayed programs cannot be started and the robot's motors cannot be activated either manually or remotely.

6 Running in production

6.3.2 Switching from manual to automatic mode *Continued*

Exceptions

In automatic mode it is possible to start a RAPID program and turn motors on remotely. This means that the system will never enter a safe standby state and the robot may move at any time.

Please consult your plant or cell documentation for details on how your system is configured.

Related information

A number of conditions can be set or reset when switching to automatic mode, see *Technical reference manual - System parameters*, sections *Auto Condition Reset* and *Run Mode Settings*.

6.3.3 Switching from automatic to manual mode

Switching from automatic to manual mode

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Set the mode switch in the manual position. | xx0300000468 |
| 2 | Did the system change mode without errors? If yes, then this procedure is completed. If no, try to locate the error. | Error handling is detailed in <i>Operating</i> manual - <i>Trouble shooting IRC5</i> . |



Note

If your specific system uses a distributed operator's panel, controls and indicators may not be placed exactly as described in this manual. Please consult your plant or cell documentation for details.

Controls and indicators do however look and function the same way.

6.3.4 Switching to manual full speed mode

6.3.4 Switching to manual full speed mode

When should I use the manual full speed mode?

Use full speed manual mode when the program is to be tested at full speed.

The manual full speed mode allows you to run the program at full speed while still having access to all the available debugging functions of the program editor.



DANGER

Testing at full speed is dangerous.

Make sure no personnel are in safeguarded space when starting the program.

Switching to manual full speed mode

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Set the mode switch to the manual full speed position. | |
| 2 | Did the system change mode without errors? If yes, then this procedure is completed. If no, try to locate the error. | Error handling is detailed in <i>Operating</i> manual - <i>Trouble shooting IRC5</i> . |



Note

When you switch to manual full speed mode, all the functionality except for **Start**, **Stop**, and **Step** are disabled.

FlexPendant alert

When changing mode, a dialog is displayed on the FlexPendant to alert you about the change of mode. Tap **OK** to close the dialog.

If you switch back to the previous mode the dialog is closed automatically and there is no change in the mode.

6.4.1 Modifying and tuning positions

6.4 Modifying positions

6.4.1 Modifying and tuning positions

Overview

Positions are instances of the data type robtarget or jointtarget. See *Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types*.

The positions can be tuned using the function HotEdit, where you enter offset values using a soft keyboard. The offset value is used together with the original position value. See *Tuning positions with HotEdit on page 264*. The HotEdit menu is described in section *HotEdit menu on page 54*.

The positions can also be modified using the **Modify positions** function in the **Program Editor** or the **Production Window** where you step and jog the robot to the new position. A modified position value overwrites the original value. See *Modifying positions in the Program Editor or Production Window on page 260.*



CAUTION

Changing programmed positions may significantly alter the robot's movement pattern.

Always make sure any changes are safe for both equipment and personnel.

Positions in arrays

If a position is declared as an array, then the procedure for modifying or tuning may differ slightly depending on how the array is indexed in the move instruction.

Limitations

Note that jointtargets can only be modified using the Modify positions method in the **Program Editor** and the **Production Window**, i.e. not with HotEdit.



Note

Your system can have restrictions on how positions can be modified. Restrictions can apply to distance using system parameters (topic *Controller*, type *ModPos Settings*) and which positions can be modified using UAS.

6.4.2 Modifying positions in the Program Editor or Production Window

6.4.2 Modifying positions in the Program Editor or Production Window

Overview

When modifying positions by jogging the robot to the new position you can either single-step through the program to the position(s) you want to modify, or jog directly to the new position and change the corresponding position argument of the instruction.

The recommendation is to step through the program to the position, but if you know your robot program well and the new position is known, it is faster to use the jogging method.



Note

Do not use this method to change orientation values.

Prerequisites

To modify positions using the Program Editor or Production Window.

- · the system must be in manual mode
- the target position must have a initial value. For example: CONST robtarget p10:=[[515.00,0.00,712.00],[0.707107,0,0.707107,0],[0,0,0,0], [9E+09,9E+09,9E+09,9E+09,9E+09]]; CONST jointtarget jpos10:=[[-0,-0,0,-0,-0], [9E+09,9E+09,9E+09,9E+09,9E+09]];



Note

To modify positions in the Production Window, you must have started the program so that the motion pointer is set.

Applying modified positions

The modified position values will normally be used when you restart the program. If the robot cannot use the values directly at start, a warning is displayed. Then the modified position will be used the next time that the position is used in the program.

Modifying positions

This procedure describes how to modify positions, either by single-stepping to the positions or jogging. You can use the **Program Editor** or the **Production Window**, the functionality is the same.

| | Action | Information |
|---|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Program Editor. | |
| 2 | Stop the program, if running. | |

6.4.2 Modifying positions in the **Program Editor** or **Production Window**Continued

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | Do you want to single-step to the position or jog? If single-stepping, step through the program to the position you want to change. Make sure the correct argument is selected. If jogging, use the Jogging view to make sure that the same work object and tool that are used in the instruction are selected. | When single-stepping, if the instruction or procedure call has more than one position argument, continue to step to reach each argument. |
| 4 | Jog to the new position. | |
| 5 | When using the jogging method, tap to select the position argument you want to change. | |
| 6 | In the Program Editor, tap Modify Position. In the Production Window, tap Debug and then Modify Position. A confirmation dialog appears. | When modifying a position in an array that is indexed with a variable you will have to select which element in the array to modify before the modification is executed. |
| 7 | Tap Modify to use the new position, Cancel to keep the original. | If you select the check box Don't show this dialog again in the confirmation dialog, then you will not get any more confirmation dialogs when modifying positions. Note This is only valid for the current Program Editor. |
| 8 | Repeat step 3 through 7 for each position argument you want to change. | |

Limitations

The **Modify position** button in the **Program Editor** is disabled until you select a position argument (that is possible to modify).

The **Modify position** button in the **Production Window** is disabled until the motion pointer is set and a position is selected. To set the motion pointer, the program must be started and then stopped.

The maximum movement or change in orientation, may be restricted by the system parameters (topic *Controller*, type *ModPos Settings*) in the system design. Please read your cell or plant documentation for details.

If the system parameters are setup to use absolute limits for position changes, then the original positions can only be restored or changed using the baseline menu in HotEdit. The baseline concept is described in section *Tuning positions* with HotEdit on page 264.

If a named position is modified, all other instructions using that position will be affected.

In the **Production Window**, circle points cannot be modified in synchronized mode. See *Application manual - MultiMove*.

Differences between Program Editor and Production Window

The procedure for modifying positions is the same in the **Program Editor** and the **Production Window**. However, there are differences in how positions are selected.

6.4.2 Modifying positions in the **Program Editor** or **Production Window** *Continued*

Also, if your system uses MultiMove, then the result from the **Program Editor** and the **Production Window** will differ. See *Application manual - MultiMove*.

Program Editor selections

To select a position for modification in the **Program Editor**, tap the desired position.

Production Window selections

To select a position for modification in the **Production Window** you must step the program to the desired position.



Note

If you have executed the program from another window and then switch back to the **Production Window**, the selected position will be changed to the position where the motion pointer now is. Make sure the correct position is selected before making the modification!

Related information

For an overview on how to modify positions, see *Modifying and tuning positions* on page 259.

HotEdit and baseline are described in Tuning positions with HotEdit on page 264.

The HotEdit menu is also described in HotEdit menu on page 54.

Modifying positions in the **Program Data** window is described in *Editing data instances on page 169*.

Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types.

Technical reference manual - System parameters.

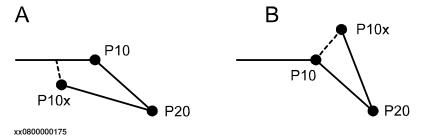
Application manual - MultiMove

Examples planned path

The following examples show how the planned path will be effected when modifying positions.

Linear movement

In example A the robot is stopped on path before reaching the position P10. The robot is jogged off path to the new position (P10x) and the position P10 is modified. In example B the robot is stopped on path in position P10. The robot is jogged off path to the new position (P10x) and the position P10 is modified.

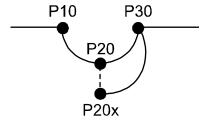


6.4.2 Modifying positions in the **Program Editor** or **Production Window**Continued

In both examples, when restarting the program the robot continues from the new P10 (that is now the same as P10x) directly to P20 without returning to the previous planned path (via the old P10).

Circular movement

In this example the robot is stopped on path in position P20 (circle point) and then jogged to the new position P20x. The position P20 is modified.



xx0800000176

In single robot systems or *MultiMove* systems in unsynchronized mode: When restarting the program the robot continues directly from the new P20 (that is now the same as P20x) to P30 without returning to the previous planned path (via the old P20). The new planned path from P20 (P20x) to P30 is calculated using these two positions and position P10.

In *MultiMove* synchronized mode: When restarting the program the robot returns to the old P20 and uses the previously planned path to P30. In the next cycle only the new P20 (P20x) is used.

6.4.3 Tuning positions with HotEdit

6.4.3 Tuning positions with HotEdit

Overview

HotEdit is used to tune programmed positions. This can be done in all operating modes and even while the program is running. Both coordinates and orientation can be tuned.

HotEdit can only be used for named positions of the type robtarget (see limitations below).

The functions available in HotEdit may be restricted by the user authorization system, UAS.

The HotEdit menu is described in the section HotEdit menu on page 54.

Applying tuned positions

Tuning values are used directly by an executing program when you tap **Apply**. If tuning is done close to the program or motion pointer it may be hard to predict exactly when it will take effect. It is therefore important that you know where in the program the robot is if applying offset values while the program is running.

However, the new values are not stored in the baseline until you use a **Commit** command.

How to tune positions

This is how you tune programmed positions using HotEdit:

| | Action | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | In the Programmed targets window, select the positions to be tuned and add them to Selected targets by tapping the arrow. | |
| 2 | Tap Tune Targets and select tuning mode (linear, reorient, or external axes) and then coordinate system (tool or work object). | |
| 3 | Tap + and - to specify the exact tuning of the position(s) in x, y and z direction. Select Increment to define the step size of these buttons. | |
| 4 | To activate the new values, tap APPLY. The offset will be used directly if the program is running. | |
| 5 | If you are satisfied with the result and want the tuned positions to become part of the baseline, tap Baseline and then Commit Selection . | |
| 6 | If, however, the selected targets need further tuning, you can tap Baseline and then Restore Selection and start all over again, or you can simply continue tuning until you are satisfied. | |

Working with selections

A selection of positions to be tuned later can be saved on the controller mass memory unit. If your system uses UAS, this may be the only way to select positions for tuning.

The commands for working with selections are located in the File menu:

| Make sure that the window Selected targets shows nothing but the positions to be saved. Tap File and Save Selection As. Enter the |
|---|
| name and optionally a description of the file, then tap OK . |

6.4.3 Tuning positions with HotEdit Continued

| Open Selection | Tap File and Open Selection. Then tap the selection you want to use and tap OK. | |
|-----------------|---|--|
| Clear Selection | Clear the Selected targets area by tapping File and Clear Selection. | |

Baseline concept

A baseline can be defined as a reference against which future changes are measured. The baseline concept makes it possible to undo tuning and revert to the position values stored in the latest baseline. To do this you use a **Restore** command.

When a **Commit** command is performed the baseline is updated with new offset values, and the old values no longer exist in program memory.

Use the baseline menu to apply or reject tuning.

- Restore Selection will discard all tuning of the currently selected positions and revert them to the values of the latest baseline, meaning that their offset values will be 0,0.
- Restore Entire Program will discard ALL tuning to programmed positions since the latest Commit command. This may include several HotEdit sessions for the same task. If the system uses Absolute Limit ModPos any Modify Position command from the Program Editor will also be undone.
- Commit Selection will apply the offset of the currently selected positions to the baseline.
- Commit Entire Program will apply ALL tuning to programmed positions. This
 may include several HotEdit sessions for the same task. If the system uses
 Absolute Limit ModPos it also includes Modify Position performed in the
 Program Editor.

Baseline target criteria

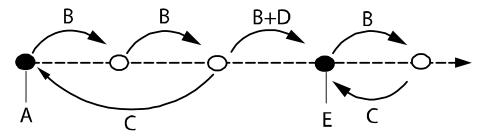
Targets that fulfil all of the following criteria are part of the baseline:

- · The data type must be robtarget or jointtarget
- It must not be declared locally in a routine
- · It must not be declared as part of an array of targets

6.4.3 Tuning positions with HotEdit Continued

Illustration of baseline concept

The baseline concept is illustrated below, where a point is moved, restored and committed. Starting out from the original baseline (A), let us assume that you move the point (B) twice. If you regret the changes you perform a restore command (C). But if you instead continue moving the point and perform a commit command (B +D), you will have created a new baseline (E) and there is no way to revert to the original baseline. If you move the point one more time and then restore, the point is moved back to the latest baseline (E).



xx0600002620

| Α | Original baseline | |
|---|---------------------|--|
| В | Move selected point | |
| С | Restore | |
| D | Commit | |
| E | New baseline | |

Restore Selection or Restore Entire Program

The following example shows the difference between **Restore Selection** and **Restore Entire Program** to original. The same idea applies for **Commit Selection** and **Commit Entire Program**.

| | Action |
|----|--|
| 1. | The robtargets p10 and p30 are added to Selected Targets and tuned once. |
| 2. | p10 is removed from Selected Targets |
| 3. | p30 is tuned again. |
| 4. | Restore Selection sets the currently selected position, p30, to its value in the latest baseline. p10 is not affected, thus still tuned. |
| | Restore Entire Program sets all tuned positions, that is both p10 and p30 to their baseline values. |

HotEdit for external axes

External axes can be tuned with HotEdit if they are activated in at least one of the selected robtargets. Only axes with active values are tuned.

Limitations

HotEdit tuning is only possible for named (e.g. p10, p20) robtargets. (* robtargets are not visible in the treeview.)

If a robtarget is declared as an array, it must be indexed with a number to be modified in HotEdit.

6.4.3 Tuning positions with HotEdit Continued

It is only possible to perform HotEdit tuning on targets that are part of the baseline. Targets that are NOT part of the baseline will not be shown in the HotEdit treeview, as they cannot be selected for tuning. This means that a target declared locally in a routine, for example, will not be displayed.

HotEdit tuning is possible for robtargets only. (Jointtargets can only be tuned by using Modify Position in the Program Editor.) If the system uses *Absolute limit ModPos* these jointtargets are however part of the baseline and will be affected when Restore Entire Program and Commit Entire Program are used.



Note

For more information about *Absolute Limit ModPos*, see the *Technical reference manual - System parameters*, section Topic *Controller - Type ModPos Settings*.

Using UAS in HotEdit

The user authorization system can be used to restrict the Hot Edit functionality and only allow a user to edit pre-selected positions. These are loaded by tapping File and then Open Selection. The selected positions can then be tuned in the usual way.

Related information

Technical reference manual - System parameters.

6.4.4 Working with displacements and offsets

6.4.4 Working with displacements and offsets

About displacements

Sometimes, the same path is to be performed at several places on the same object, or on several work pieces located next to each other. To avoid having to reprogram all positions each time a displacement coordinate system can be defined.

This coordinate system can also be used in conjunction with searches, to compensate for differences in the positions of the individual parts.

The displacement coordinate system is defined based on the object coordinate system.

The displacement coordinate system is described in section *Coordinate systems* for jogging on page 121.

Select displacement method

Depending on how, when, and how often you want to use displacements, the best method may vary.

Moving a work object

Moving a work object is suitable when you do not need to move or displace the work object very often.

This is detailed in section Defining the work object coordinate system on page 191.

Displace a work object

A work object consists of a user frame and a object frame. You can move one or both of these frames. If you move both frames, then the whole work object is moved. It can be useful to displace the object frame from the user frame for instance when using one fixture for several work objects. Then you can keep the user frame and displace the object frame for the work objects.

See procedure *How to define object frame* in section *Defining the work object coordinate system on page 191*.

Displace and rotate a work object

You may want to displace and rotate the object frame from the user frame if the displacement is not in just x, y, and z.

To displace in x, y, and z, you can use the same method as above. To rotate the work object, follow the procedure in section *Editing the work object data on page 195*.

About offsets

Sometimes it is easier to define a position as an offset from a given position. If, for example, you know the exact dimensions of a work object, it will only be necessary to jog to one position.

The offset is programmed with the displacement distance in x, y, and z direction, in relation to the work object. For instance:

```
MoveL Offs(p10, 100, 50, 0), v50...
```

Define the offset for the position with the following expressions:

1 Original position / starting point

6.4.4 Working with displacements and offsets Continued

- 2 Displacement in x direction
- 3 Displacement in y direction
- 4 Displacement in z direction

Examples

This example shows the move instructions with offsets to move the robot in a square (clockwise), starting at p10, with a 100 mm displacement in x and y.

```
MoveL p10, v50...

MoveL Offs(p10, 100, 0, 0), v50...

MoveL Offs(p10, 100, 100, 0), v50...

MoveL Offs(p10, 0, 100, 0), v50...

MoveL p10, v50...
```

How to create position offsets

This procedure details how to change a position to become an offset position.

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|-------------|
| 1 | In the Program Editor, tap to select the position argument to edit. | |
| 2 | Tap Edit and then Change Selected. | |
| 3 | Tap Functions and then Offs. | |
| 4 | Tap to select each expression, <exp>, and then tap any of the desired available data or functions.</exp> | |
| | You can also tap Edit to access more functions. Tap All to open the soft keyboard and edit all expressions at the same time, or tap Only Selected to edit one at a time with the soft keyboard. | |
| 5 | Tap OK to save changes. | |

Related information

There are a number of functions in RAPID that may be useful. See *Technical* reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types, and Technical reference manual - RAPID overview.

6.4.5 Moving the robot to a programmed position

6.4.5 Moving the robot to a programmed position

Positions

A robot program usually contain programmed positions. The robot can move automatically to a programmed position using a function in the **Jogging** menu.

The robot will move at 250 mm/s.



DANGER

When moving the robot automatically, the robot arm may move without warning. Make sure no personnel are in safeguarded space and that no objects are in the way between the current position and the programmed position.

Moving the robot to a programmed position

This procedure describes how to move a robot automatically to a programmed position.

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Jogging. | |
| 2 | Make sure the correct mechanical unit is selected and then tap Go To | |
| 3 | Tap to select a programmed position. | If you have many programmed positions you can use a filter to narrow down the visible positions. See section <i>Filtering data on page 93</i> . |
| 4 | Press and hold the three-position enabling device and then tap and hold the Go To button. The robot now moves directly from the current position to the programmed position. Make sure no objects are in the way. | |

7 Handling inputs and outputs, I/O

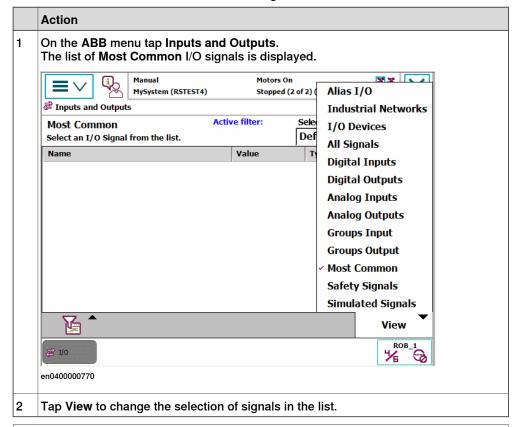
7.1 Viewing signal lists

Overview

I/O signal properties is used to view the input and output signals and their values. Signals are configured with system parameters .

How to view signal lists

This section details how to view a list of signals.





Tip

Tap the Select Layout menu if you want to view signal labels in the list.

Related information

Simulating and changing signal values on page 272.

Filtering data on page 93.

Configuring Most Common I/O on page 113.

7.2 Simulating and changing signal values

7.2 Simulating and changing signal values

Simulating and changing signal values

A signal can be changed into a simulated signal and the value of the signal can be changed. More information on how to change the signal's properties is described in the section Control Panel, *Configuring Most Common I/O on page 113*.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap I/O. A list of most common signals is displayed. See section <i>Configuring Most Common I/O on page 113</i> . |
| 2 | Tap on a signal. |
| 3 | Tap on Simulate to change the signal into a simulated signal. Tap on Remove Simulation to remove the simulation from the signal. |
| 4 | For a digital signal, tap 0 or 1 to change the signal's value. For analog signals and groups, tap on 123 to change the signal's value. The soft numeric keyboard is displayed. Enter the new value and tap OK. |

7.3 Viewing signal group

7.3 Viewing signal group

Viewing signal group

This section details how to view signal groups.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap I/O. A list of most common signals is displayed. See section <i>Configuring Most Common I/O on page 113</i> . |
| 2 | In the View menu, tap Groups. |
| 3 | Tap on the signal group's name in the list and then tap Properties . Or tap twice on the signal group's name. The signal group's properties is displayed. |

7.4.1 Safety I/O signals

7.4 Safety signals

7.4.1 Safety I/O signals

General

In the controller's basic and standard form, certain I/O signals are dedicated to specific safety functions. These are listed below with a brief description of each. All signals can be viewed in the I/O menu on the FlexPendant.

Safety I/O signals

The list below contains the safety I/O signals as used by the standard system.

| Signal name | Description | Bit value condition | From - To |
|-------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ES1 | Emergency stop, chain | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| ES2 | Emergency stop, chain 2 | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| SOFTESI | Soft Emergency stop | 1 = Soft stop enabled | From panel board to main computer |
| EN1 | Enabling device1&2, chain 1 | 1 = Enabled | From panel board to main computer |
| EN2 | Enabling device1&2, chain 2 | 1 = Enabled | From panel board to main computer |
| AUTO1 | Op mode selector, chain 1 | 1 = Auto selected | From panel board to main computer |
| AUTO2 | Op mode selector, chain 2 | 1 = Auto selected | From panel board to main computer |
| MAN1 | Op mode selector, chain 1 | 1 = MAN selected | From panel board to main computer |
| MANFS1 | Op mode selector, chain 1 | 1 = Man. full speed selected | From panel board to main computer |
| MAN2 | Op mode selector, chain 2 | 1 = MAN selected | From panel board to main computer |
| MANFS2 | Op mode selector, chain 2 | 1 = Man. full speed selected | From panel board to main computer |
| USERDOOVLD | Over load, user DO | 1 = Error, 0 = OK | From panel board to main computer |
| MONPB | Motors-on pushbutton | 1 = Pushbutton pressed | From panel board to main computer |
| AS1 | Auto stop, chain 1 | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| AS2 | Auto stop, chain 2 | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| SOFTASI | Soft Auto stop | 1 = Soft stop enabled | From panel board to main computer |
| GS1 | General stop, chain 1 | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |

7.4.1 Safety I/O signals Continued

| Signal name | Description | Bit value condition | From - To |
|-------------|---|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| GS2 | General stop, chain 2 | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| SOFTGSI | Soft General stop | 1 = Soft stop enabled | From panel board to main computer |
| SS1 | Superior stop, chain1 | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| SS2 | Superior stop, chain2 | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| SOFTSSI | Soft Superior stop | 1 = Soft stop enabled | From panel board to main computer |
| CH1 | All switches in run chain 1 closed | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| CH2 | All switches in run chain 2 closed | 1 = Chain closed | From panel board to main computer |
| ENABLE1 | Enable from MC (read back) | 1 = Enable, 0 = break chain 1 | From panel board to main computer |
| ENABLE2_1 | Enable from AXC1 | 1 = Enable, 0 = break chain 2 | From panel board to main computer |
| ENABLE2_2 | Enable from AXC2 | 1 = Enable, 0 = break chain 2 | From panel board to main computer |
| ENABLE2_3 | Enable from AXC3 | 1 = Enable, 0 = break chain 2 | From panel board to main computer |
| ENABLE2_4 | Enable from AXC4 | 1 = Enable, 0 = break chain 2 | From panel board to main computer |
| PANEL24OVLD | Overload, panel 24V | 1 = Error, 0 = OK | From panel board to main computer |
| DRVOVLD | Overload, drive mod- ules | 1 = Error, 0 = OK | From panel board to main computer |
| DRV1LIM1 | Read back of chain 1 after limit switches | 1 = Chain 1 closed | From axis computer to main computer |
| DRV1LIM2 | Read back of chain 2 after limit switches | 1 = Chain 2 closed | From axis computer to main computer |
| DRV1K1 | Read back of contactor K1, chain 1 | 1 = K1 closed | From axis computer to main computer |
| DRV1K2 | Read back of contactor K2, chain 2 | 1 = K2 closed | From axis computer to main computer |
| DRV1EXTCONT | External contactors closed | 1 = Contactors closed | From axis computer to main computer |
| DRV1TEST1 | A dip in run chain 1 has been detected | Toggled | From axis computer to main computer |
| DRV1TEST2 | A dip in run chain 2 has been detected | Toggled | From axis computer to main computer |
| SOFTESO | Soft Emergency stop | 1 = Set soft E-stop | From main computer to panel board |
| SOFTASO | Soft Auto stop | 1 = Set soft Auto stop | From main computer to panel board |
| SOFTGSO | Soft General stop | 1 = Set soft General stop | From main computer to panel board |

7.4.1 Safety I/O signals *Continued*

| Signal name | Description | Bit value condition | From - To |
|-------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| SOFTSSO | Soft Superior stop | 1 = Set soft Sup. E- stop | From main computer to panel board |
| MOTLMP | Motors-on lamp | 1 = Lamp on | From main computer to panel board |
| TESTEN1 | Test of Enable1 | 1 = Start test | From main computer to panel board |
| DRV1CHAIN1 | Signal to interlocking circuit | 1 = Close chain 1 | From main computer to axis computer 1 |
| DRV1CHAIN2 | Signal to interlocking circuit | 1 = Close chain 2 | From main computer to axis computer 1 |
| DRV1BRAKE | Signal to brake-release coil | 1 = Release brake | From main computer to axis computer 1 |

8.1 Accessing the event log

8 Handling the event log

8.1 Accessing the event log

Event log

Open the event log to:

- · view all present entries.
- · study specific entries in detail.
- · handle the log entries, such as saving or deleting.

The log can be printed by using RobotStudio.

Open and close the event log

This section details how to open the event log.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | Tap the status bar. The status window is displayed. |
| 2 | Tap Event Log. The event log list is displayed. |
| 3 | If the log contents do not fit into a single screen, it can be scrolled. |
| 4 | Tap a log entry to view the event message. |
| 5 | Tap the status bar again to close the log. |

Related information

Operating manual - RobotStudio.

8.2 Deleting log entries

8.2 Deleting log entries

Why should I delete log entries?

Logs can be deleted to increase available disk space. Deleting log entries is often a good way to trace faults since you remove old and insignificant log entries not related to the problem you are trying to solve.

Delete all log entries

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | Tap the status bar, then the Event Log tab to open the event log. |
| 2 | On the View menu, tap Common. |
| 3 | Tap Delete and then Delete all logs. A confirmation dialog is displayed. |
| 4 | Tap Yes to delete, or No to keep the log intact. |

Delete log entries of a specific category

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | Tap the status bar, then the Event Log tab to open the event log. |
| 2 | On the View menu, tap the category of choice. |
| 3 | Tap Delete and then Delete log. A confirmation dialog is displayed. |
| 4 | Tap Yes to delete, or No to keep the log intact. |

8.3 Saving log entries

8.3 Saving log entries

Why should I save log entries?

You should save log entries when:

- you need to clear the log but want to keep the current entries to be viewed later.
- · you want to send log entries to support to solve a problem.
- · you want to keep log entries for future reference.



Note

The log can keep up to 20 entries per category and up to 1000 entries in the all events list. When the buffer is full the oldest entries will be overwritten and lost. There is no way to retrieve these lost log entries.

Save all log entries

This section details how to save all log entries.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | Tap the status bar to open the event log. |
| 2 | Tap Save all logs as. The file dialog is displayed. |
| 3 | If you want to save the log in a different folder, locate and open the folder. |
| 4 | In the File name box, type a name for the file. |
| 5 | Tap Save. |



9 Backup and restore

9.1 Back up the system

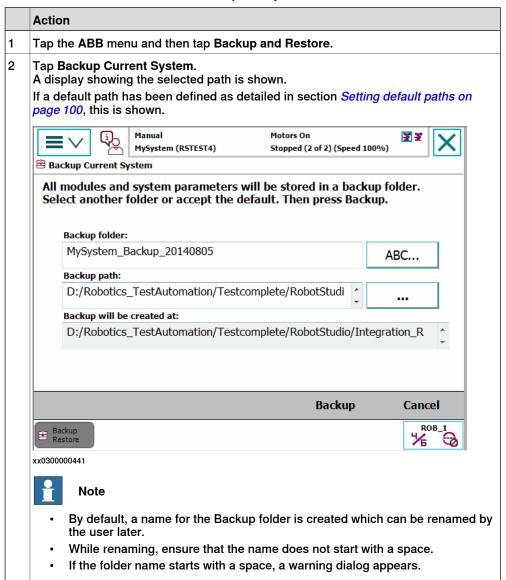
When do I need this?

We recommend performing a backup:

- Before installing new RobotWare.
- *Before* making any major changes to instructions and/or parameters to make it possible to return to the previous setting.
- After making any major changes to instructions and/or parameters and testing the new settings to retain the new successful setting.

Back up the system

This section describes how to back up the system.



9.1 Back up the system

Continued

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 3 | Is the displayed backup path the correct one? If YES: Tap Backup to perform the backup to the selected directory. A backup file named according to the current date is created. If NO: Tap to the right of the backup path and select directory. Then tap Backup . A backup folder named according to the current date is created. |

9.2 Restore the system

When do I need this?

We recommend performing a restore:

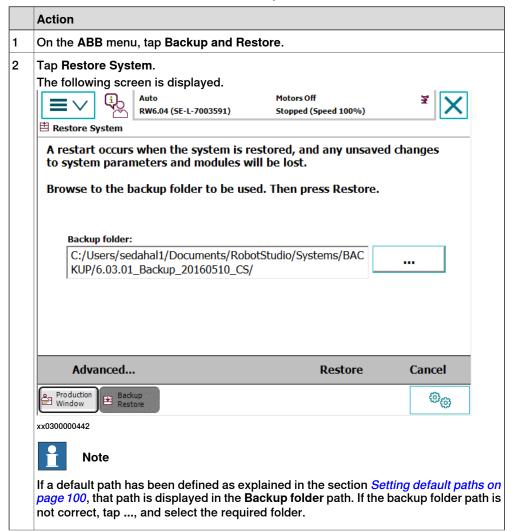
- · If you suspect that the program file is corrupt.
- If any changes made to the instructions and/or parameters settings did not prove successful, and you want to return to the previous settings.

During the restore, all system parameters are replaced and all the modules from the backup directory are loaded.

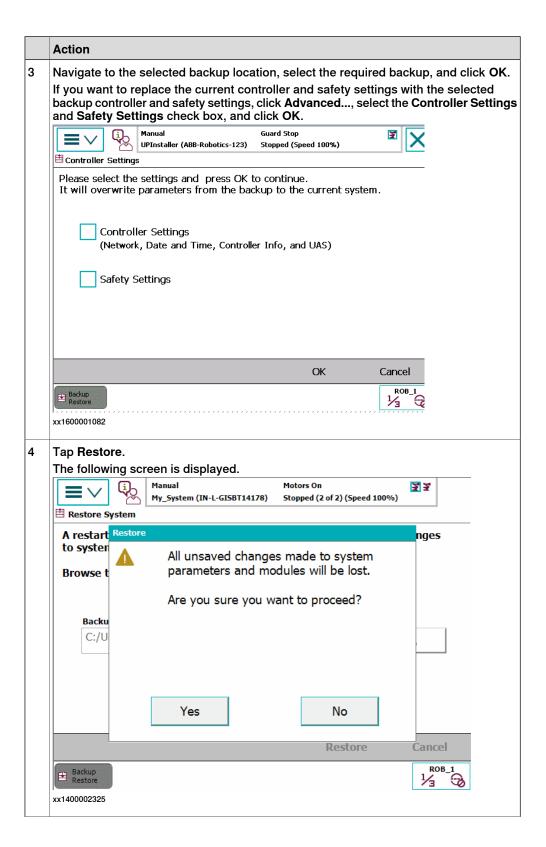
The Home directory is copied back to the new system's HOME directory during the restart.

Restore the system

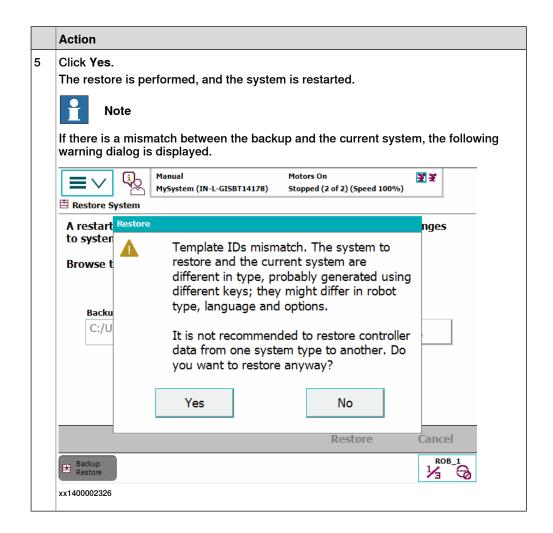
This section describes how to restore the system.



9.2 Restore the system *Continued*



9.2 Restore the system *Continued*



9.3 Important when performing backups!

9.3 Important when performing backups!

General

When creating backups or restoring previously made backups, there are several things to keep in mind. Some of these are listed below.

BACKUP directory

A local default backup directory, BACKUP, is automatically created by the system. We recommend using this directory for saving backups! Such backups are not copied to the directory HOME in following backups.

Never change the name of the BACKUP directory.

Also, never change the name of the actual backup to BACKUP, since this would cause interference with this directory.

A default path can be created to any location on the network where the backup should be stored, see *Setting default paths on page 100*.

When is backup possible?

A backup of a system can be performed during program execution, with a few limitations:

- Start program, load program, load module, close program and erase module can not be done during backup in executing state. The RAPID instructions Load and StartLoad can, however, be used.
- Do not run backups while performing critical or sensitive movements, this
 may affect the accuracy and performance of the movement. Use the system
 input Disable Backup to make sure that no backup is requested while in
 critical areas. For more information, see Technical reference manual System
 parameters.

What happens during backup?

Beside the obvious, a backup being made, some other things happen during backup. For example, background tasks continue to execute.

Duplicated modules?

No save operation is performed in the backup command. This implies that two revisions of the same module can exist in the backup, one from the program memory saved in Rapid\Task\Progmod\directory and one from the HOME directory copied to the backup's home directory. Restoring such a backup will restore both revisions of the module, so the status remains unchanged.

Large data amount

Too many files in the HOME directory can result in a very large backup directory. The unnecessary files in the home directory can then be deleted without any problems.

9.3 Important when performing backups! *Continued*

Faults during backup

If a fault occurs during the backup, for example full disk or power failure, the whole backup structure is deleted.



10.1 How to check if the robot needs calibration

10 Calibrating

10.1 How to check if the robot needs calibration

Check robot calibration status

This section describes how to check the robot's calibration status.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | On the ABB menu, tap Calibration. |
| 2 | In the list of mechanical units, check the calibration status. |

What kind of calibration is needed?

| If the calibration status is | then | |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| Not calibrated | the robot must be calibrated by a qualified service technician. | |
| Rev. counter update needed | You must update the revolution counters. How to update the revolution counters is described in the product manual for the robot. | |
| Calibrated | No calibration is needed. | |



DANGER

Do not attempt to perform the fine calibration procedure without the proper training and tools. Doing so may result in incorrect positioning that may cause injuries and property damage.

10.2 Updating revolution counters

10.2 Updating revolution counters

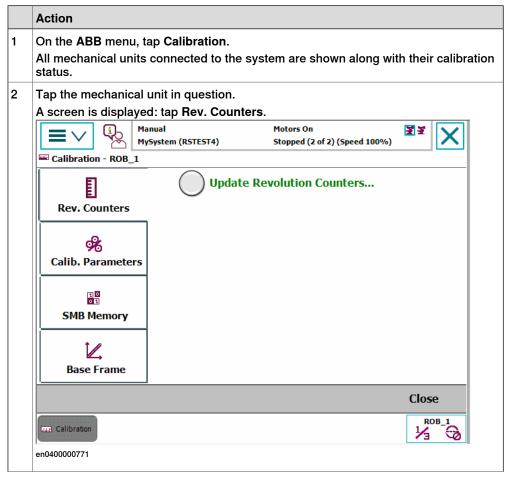
Overview

This section details how to perform a rough calibration of each robot axis, that is updating the revolution counter value for each axis, using the FlexPendant. Detailed information about revolution counters and how to update them, with calibration positions and scales, can be found in the respective robot product manual. Also, see the manual *Operating manual - Calibration Pendulum* for information on calibration.

For robots using the *Absolute Accuracy* option, the calibration data file absacc.cfg must be loaded first.

Storing the revolution counter setting

This procedure details the second step when updating the revolution counter; storing the revolution counter setting.



10.2 Updating revolution counters Continued

Action

3 Tap Update Revolution Counters.

A dialog box is displayed, warning that updating the revolution counters may change programmed robot positions:

- Tap Yes to update the revolution counters.
- · Tap No to cancel updating the revolution counters.

Tapping Yes displays the axis selection window.



Note

When updating the revolution counters, the ongoing RAPID instruction or function is interrupted, and the path is cleared.

- 4 Select the axis to have its revolution counter updated by:
 - · Ticking in the box to the left
 - Tapping Select all to update all axes.

Then tap Update.

- 5 A dialog box is displayed, warning that the updating operation cannot be undone:
 - Tap Update to proceed with updating the revolution counters.
 - Tap Cancel to cancel updating the revolution counters.

Tapping **Update** updates the selected revolution counters and removes the tick from the list of axes.

6



CAUTION

If a revolution counter is incorrectly updated, it will cause incorrect manipulator positioning, which in turn may cause damage or injury!

Check the calibration position very carefully after each update.

See section *Checking the calibration position* in either of the calibration manuals, depending on which calibration method to be used. The Product manual for the robot also contains more information about calibration.

Related information

Operating manual - Calibration Pendulum



| ABB menu, 41 approach points, 179 array modify positions, 172 automatic mode about, 204 limitations, 204 switching to, 255 axes illustration, 122 B background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 Loadldentify, 220 D danger levels, 18 data instance, 61, 167 data types creating new, 167 editing, 169 menu, 66 date and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 288 work object, 191 display, 44 Elengator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 files, 93 | Index | selecting, 82, 136 | |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| ABB menu, 41 approach points, 179 array modify positions, 172 automatic mode about, 204 switching to, 255 axes illustration, 122 B background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 batery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C Callendulum, 218 Loadidentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 stouch screen, 117 calibration, 49 status, 289 sinternational, 89 cleaning Flex Pendant, 29 cleaning Flex Pendant Explorer, 56 Flex Pendant Tino connector, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 221 H | | | |
| approach points, 179 array modify positions, 172 automatic mode about, 204 limitations, 204 switching to, 255 axes illustration, 122 B background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 batery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibration, 49 status, 289 stouch screen, 117 calibration, 49 status, 289 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 coverview, 38 ports, 51 coverview, 38 controller buttons, 51 coverview, 38 coverview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 connector, 51 coverview, 221 H data instance, 61, 167 data types creating new, 167 editing, 168 menu, 61 viewing, 166 date and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 28 work object, 191 display, 44 elefluspaths setting, 100 displacements about, 28 elongator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 39 emergency stop button, 24 energency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 eft-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant Trio connector, 51 forward button, 39 | A | about, 165 | |
| approach points, 179 array modify positions, 172 automatic mode about, 204 switching to, 255 axiliustration, 122 B background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 batery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C Calleandulum, 218 Loadidentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 stouch screen, 117 calibration, 49 status, 289 international, 89 clearing FlexPendant, 29 clearing FlexPendant, 29 clearing FlexPendant, 29 clearing FlexPendant, 29 clearing, 89 international, 89 clearing FlexPendant, 29 clearing FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant Tvio connector, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 25 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant Tvio connector, 51 forward button, 39 | ABB menu, 41 | D | |
| array modify positions, 172 automatic mode about, 204 imitations, 204 switching to, 255 axes B background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C CallPendulum, 218 Loadldentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 solvented services, 38 controller buttons, 51 colored by status, 289 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 control loots, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 supportant, 29 connecting in operation, 246 clisconecting, 246 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error message, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 Fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant texplorer, 56 FlexPendant or 110 connector, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 32 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 32 poverview, 34 poverview, 35 poverview, 36 poverview, 37 poverview, 36 poverview, 37 poverview, 32 poverview, 34 poverview, 35 poverview, 36 poverview, 36 poverview, 37 poverview, 32 pove | approach points, 179 | | |
| modify positions, 172 automatic mode about, 204 switching to, 255 saxes illustration, 122 B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B | array | | |
| automatic mode about, 204 limitations, 204 switching to, 255 axes illustration, 122 default, 166 date and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 display, 44 display, 45 display, 44 display, 45 display, 44 display, 45 display, 45 display, 45 display, 46 display, 46 display, 46 display, 47 d | modify positions, 172 | | |
| about, 204 switching to, 255 axes illustration, 122 B B B B Gearmin, 102 background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 coverview, 36 ports, 51 control lotos, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 soverview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 viewing, 166 date and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 268 about, 268 work object, 191 display, 44 flex and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 display, 44 flex and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 display, 44 flex and time, 112 default paths setting, 110 display, 44 flex and time, 112 default paths setting, 110 display, 44 flex paths setting, 110 display, 44 flex paths setting, 120 menu, 70 mensage, 71 even log menu, 70 message, 71 even log menu, 70 me | automatic mode | | |
| Illimitations, 204 switching to, 255 axes axes illustration, 122 B background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 bastery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 99 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 soverview, 121 H menu, 61 date and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 displacements default setting, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 displacements default setting, 100 displacements default setting, 110 displacements default setting, 120 displacements default setting, 121 default paths setting, 100 displacements default setting, 120 displacements default setting, 121 default paths setting, 100 displacements default settings, 246 energency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | 11 to 11 | | |
| axes illustration, 122 B background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 bately shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 soverview, 121 date and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 display, 44 E elongator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FiexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stop button, 44 FiexPendant, 29 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H date and time, 112 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 display, 44 E elongator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FiexPendant, 29 cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| axes illustration, 122 default paths setting, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 display, 44 display, 45 display, 46 display, 46 display, 46 display, 46 display, 47 display, 47 display, 48 difficult for the characters of th | 3 , | viewing, 166 | |
| B background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 displacements about, 268 work object, 191 display, 44 define, 181 elengator points define, 181 elengator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 91 event log official menu, 70 message, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 91 event log official menu, 70 menu, | | | |
| background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 55 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C CallPendulum, 218 Loadldentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CallPendulum, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 default settings, 121 overview, 121 displaxed about, 288 work object, 191 display, 44 displacements about, 288 work object, 191 display, 44 displacements about, 288 work object, 191 display, 44 delangator, points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 Ferplendant, 20 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 Ferplendant, 29 filesbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 39 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FiexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 scree | illustration, 122 | default paths | |
| background changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibration, 49 status, 289 status, 289 stouch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum, 218 Loaddentify, 220 calculaning FlexPendant, 29 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 coverview, 38 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H E elongator points define, 181 define, 181 elengator points define, 181 elengator, 44 FlexPendant, 26 eablingency stop button, 49 situs, 23, 38 emergency stop button, 49 situs, 23, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 event log menu, 70 message, 71 event log menu, 70 message, 71 event log menu, 70 message, 91 event log me | R | setting, 100 | |
| changing, 102 backup default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons Calculation result, 181 callender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 Loaddentify, 220 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 cleaning FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 hot plug, 246 cleft-hander, 40 cleaning FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 hot plug, 246 cleft-hander, 40 cleaning FlexPendant Cxplorer, 56 FlexPen | | • | |
| default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H Elongator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 44 riexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stop button, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 lexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant Ti10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| default file path, 100 directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 Loadidentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H Eelongator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 flexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 beout using, 32, 207 fror define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 bootton, 23 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 emergency stops terovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 boott, 96 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 bootton, 26 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 bootton, 26 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 bootton, 46 disconnecting in operation, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 how t | | | |
| directory, 286 important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C Calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibration, 49 status, 289 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 136 corrections control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 Eelongator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 41 connector, 38 coverview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant Ti70 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | display, 44 | |
| important, 286 menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons Calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 Heilongator points define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops emergency stops trender) stop button, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 Fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 emergency stop button, 49 statusing, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 Fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or 710 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | _ | |
| menu, 65 system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems define, 181 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 files, 93 recovering, 25 fearbling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 files, 93 rograms, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 files-productions files proveries are recovering, 25 files productions files proveries are recovering and service pourtions and service pourtions and service pourtions. File | | | |
| system, 281 backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibration, 49 status, 289 stouch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stop button, 44 FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stop button, 44 emergency stop button, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | · | |
| backward button, 39 backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 23, 38 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 brositions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stops mercovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 positions, 268 posi | | | |
| backward execution about, 210 limitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C Calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 controller buttons, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 emergency stops recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error message, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 bostitons, 268 positions, 268 positions, 268 positions, 268 positions, 268 positions, 268 positions, 268 programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stops using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 | backward button, 39 | | |
| about, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 recovering, 25 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 default settings, 121 overview, 121 H | backward execution | | |
| Ilmitations, 210 base coordinates default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C Calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 Loadldentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 stouch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 enabling device, 21, 38, 44 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fileldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 H | about, 210 | | |
| default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 using, 32, 207 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 bositions, 268 positions, 268 positions, 268 programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 H | limitations, 210 | | |
| default settings, 121 selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 error messages, 91 event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | base coordinates | | |
| selecting, 136 baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H event log menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 Fer fieldbuses, 57 filles programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | default settings, 121 | - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | |
| baseline concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 menu, 70 message, 71 expressions offs, 268 positions, 268 filles programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | selecting, 136 | | |
| concept, 265 target criteria, 265 battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C C Calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H F C fieldbuses, 57 filles programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting, 29 connecting, 29 connecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | baseline | <u> </u> | |
| battery shutdown service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 files, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 canibration menu, 66 calPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 buttons controller buttons, 217 control tools, overview, 121 control tools, overview, 121 control tools, overview, 121 Fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 filex, 93 programs, 93 flexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 flexPendant Explorer, 56 flexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 default settings, 121 overview, 121 | | message, 71 | |
| service routine, 217 buttons controller, 51 C Calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 F F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| buttons controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 F fieldbuses, 57 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | · | offs, 268 | |
| controller, 51 C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 Fieldbuses, 57 filles programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 rograms, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | positions, 268 | |
| C calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting, 29 connecting in operation, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | _ | |
| calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 files programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | controller, 51 | | |
| calculation result, 181 calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 Times programs, 148 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | C | | |
| calender time counter, 219 calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 filtering about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| calibrating CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 Telexpendalt cleaning about, 93 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| CalPendulum, 218 LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 data types, 93 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| LoadIdentify, 220 calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 files, 93 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | 1 | |
| calibration, 49 status, 289 touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 programs, 93 FlexPendant cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | 5 1 | |
| touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 The Application menu, 66 CalPendunt cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | calibration, 49 | | |
| touch screen, 117 calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 connector, 17 connector, 18 connector, 18 connector, 29 cleaning, 29 connecting in operation, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | status, 289 | | |
| calibration menu, 66 CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 connecting in operation, 246 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| CalPendulum service routine, 218 characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 disconnecting, 246 emergency stop button, 23 hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| characters entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 Hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | | |
| entering, 89 international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 Hardware buttons, 39 hot plug, 246 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | emergency stop button, 23 | |
| international, 89 cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 how to hold, 40, 110 jumper plug, 246 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | hardware buttons, 39 | |
| cleaning FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | . 9, | hot plug, 246 | |
| FlexPendant, 29 close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 Heft-hander, 40 left-hander, 40 main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | | how to hold, 40, 110 | |
| close button, 41 connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H main parts, 38 overview, 37 rotating, 111 screen, 41 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | 5 | jumper plug, 246 | |
| connector, 38 controller buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 control tools, 021 overview, 121 control tools, 039 control tools, 04 control tool | | | |
| controller rotating, 111 buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H | | | |
| buttons, 51 overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | , | |
| overview, 36 ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 FlexPendant Explorer, 56 FlexPendant or T10 connector, 51 forward button, 39 H | | | |
| ports, 51 control tools, overview, 48 coordinate systems default settings, 121 overview, 121 H | | | |
| control tools, overview, 48 connector, 51 forward button, 39 default settings, 121 everyiew, 121 | | | |
| coordinate systems forward button, 39 default settings, 121 overview, 121 H | • • | | |
| default settings, 121 overview, 121 H | | | |
| overview, 121 H | | iorward button, 39 | |
| 0 1 1 1 00 | | н | |
| | | - - | |

| hold-to-run, 21, 240 using, 33, 207 | log off, 98 log on, 98 |
|---|--|
| hold-to-run button, 38 HotEdit, 54, 260 | М |
| using, 264 | main switch |
| hot plug, 246 | controller, 51 |
| | ManLoadIdentify |
| | service routine, 228 |
| 1/0 | manual full speed mode |
| about, 57 | about, 205 |
| changing values, 272 menu, 57 | switching to, 258 manual mode |
| most common, 113 | about, 205 |
| safety signals, 274 | limitations, 205 |
| simulating, 272 | switching to, 257 |
| viewing groups, 273 | mechanical unit |
| I/O, inputs and outputs, 271 | quickset, 79 |
| incremental movement | selecting, 79, 130 |
| definition, 139 | mechanical units |
| quickset, 84 setting size, 139 | activate automatically, 64 |
| size settings, 84, 140 | modifying positions, 260 arrays, 172 |
| insertion point, change, 90 | data instances, 169 |
| instances | overview, 259 |
| data types, 167 | ModPos, 260 |
| instructions | Absolute Limit ModPos, 259 |
| backward execution, 210 | modules |
| changing motion mode, 163 | creating, 151 |
| commenting, 163 | deleting, 154 |
| copying and pasting, 163 copying arguments, 163 | handling of, 151 loading, 152 |
| cutting, 163 | renaming, 153 |
| editing arguments, 161 | saving, 152 |
| handling of, 160 | most common I/O |
| running from a specific, 208 | configuring, 113 |
| undo, redo, 160 | motion mode |
| international characters, 89 | Quickset, 80 |
| J | selecting, 80, 132 |
| jogging | motion pointer, MP, 211 Motion Pointer, MP |
| about, 119 | about, 165 |
| additional axes, 128 | multitasking programs |
| axes in independent mode, 128 | about, 241 |
| coordinated, 129 | loading, running and stopping, 241 |
| coordinate systems, 136 | viewing, 242 |
| non calibrated mechanical units, 128 | _ |
| restrictions, 128 world zones, 128 | O offsets |
| jogging menu, 58 | about, 268 |
| joystick, 38, 44 | creating, 269 |
| locking directions, 137 | description, 268 |
| using, 38 | operation time counter, 219 |
| joystick directions | operator window, 41, 76 |
| about, 127 | options |
| illustration, 122 | Calibration Pendulum, 66 |
| locking, 137 | duty time counter, 51 |
| jumper plug, 246 | hot plug button, 51, 246 Levelmeter Calibration, 66 |
| L | MultiMove, 129 |
| left-handed, 110 | safety chain LEDs, 51 |
| linear mode | service outlet, 51 |
| default settings, 121 | service port, 51 |
| linear motion mode, 127 | n |
| LoadIdentify | P |
| service routine, 220 loads | path returning to, 250 |
| identifying, 220 | path return region, 250 |
| , , | ,, |

| payloads | reorient mode |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| creating, 198 | default settings, 121 |
| declarations, 199 | reorient motion mode, 127 |
| deleting, 203 | reset button |
| | location, 38 |
| display definitions, 200 | |
| editing, 200 | using, 39 |
| editing declarations, 202 | resolvers |
| identifying, 220 | about, 141 |
| selecting, 133 | restart |
| ports | menu, 74 |
| controller, 51 | restore |
| positions about 141 | default file path, 100 |
| about, 141 | menu, 65 |
| exact, 141 | system, 283 |
| HotEdit, 260 modifying, 259–260 | revolution counters about, 141 |
| | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |
| moving to, 270 | battery shutdown, 217 |
| naming rules, 105 | setting, 290 |
| offset, 268 | updating, 290 |
| reading, 141 | RobotStudio |
| tuning, 54, 259–260, 264 | overview, 47 |
| product standards, 16 | RobotStudio Oline Apps, 45 |
| program a robot, 49 | Calibrate, 45 |
| program data | Jog, 46 |
| editing, 169 | Manage, 45 |
| menu, 61 | Operate, 46 |
| program directory, 148 | Tune, 46 |
| program execution start button, 39 | YuMi, 46 |
| programmable buttons | RobotWare option, 43 routines |
| editing, 115 | |
| programmable keys | changing declarations, 158 |
| editing, 115 program pointer, PP, 211 | copying, 158 creating, 155 |
| Program Pointer, PP | defining parameters, 156 |
| about, 165 | deleting, 158 |
| programs | handling of, 155 |
| about files, 148 | running a specific, 209 |
| creating, 148 | running a specific, 203 |
| default file path, 100 | run button, 39 |
| handling of, 148 | run mode |
| loading, 149 | quickset, 85 |
| multitasking, 241 | setting, 85 |
| renaming, 150 | 55ttig, 55 |
| saving, 149 | S |
| starting, 237 | safety |
| step by step execution, 210 | moving robots, 28 |
| stopping, 240 | signals, 18 |
| 5.5pp9, = .5 | signals in manual, 18 |
| Q | symbols, 18 |
| quickset | safety I/O signals, 274 |
| increments, 84 | safety signals |
| mechanical unit, 79 | in manual, 18 |
| Quickset | safety standards, 16 |
| coordinate systems, 82 | scrolling, 92 |
| motion mode, 80 | service port, 51 |
| run mode, 85 | service routine, 252 |
| speed mode, 87 | service routines |
| step mode, 86 | bat_shutdown, 217 |
| tasks, 88 | CalPendulum, 218 |
| tools, 81 | LoadIdentify, 220 |
| work objects, 81 | ManLoadIdentify, 228 |
| quickset menu, 41 | running, 213 |
| _ | ServiceInfo, 219 |
| R | signals |
| RAPID, 146 | changing values, 272 |
| redo | safety, 18 |
| instructions, 160 | simulating, 272 |

| viewing, 271 | methods, 178 |
|--|--|
| SIS, Service Information System | reorientation test, 181 |
| counters, 219 | tool orientation, 181 |
| service routine, 219 | setting, 134 |
| SMB | tool orientation, definition, 134 |
| battery shutdown, 217 | tools |
| soft keyboard, 89 | aligning, 143 |
| speed mode Quickset, 87 | creating, 175 deleting, 186 |
| setting, 87 | editing declarations, 185 |
| standards, 16 | editing definitions, 183 |
| ANSI, 17 | editing tool data, 182 |
| CAN, 17 | identifying loads, 220 |
| EN, 16 | make stationary, 187 |
| EN IEC, 16 | Quickset, 81 |
| EN ISO, 16 | selecting, 81, 133 |
| start button, 39 | setting up tool coordinate system, 188 |
| status bar, 41, 77 | stationary, 187 |
| step | Total Load, 198 |
| backward, 39 | touch screen, 37, 41 |
| forward, 39 | background image, 102 brightness, 109 |
| step by step execution, 210 step mode | calibrating, 117 |
| Quickset, 86 | rotating, 111 |
| setting, 86 | trouble shooting, 249 |
| stop button, 39 | tuning |
| stylus pen | HotEdit, 260 |
| location, 38 | positions, 259–260, 264 |
| using, 39 | targets, 259–260 |
| symbols | |
| safety, 18 | U |
| system | UAS |
| backup, 281 | configuring views, 103 |
| restore, 283 | uncalibrated mechanical unit, 252 undo |
| system parameters, 49 | instructions, 160 |
| T | USB port |
| targets | FlexPendant, 38 |
| modifying, 259–260 | |
| moving to, 270 | V |
| naming rules, 105 | viewing messages in programs, 76 |
| tuning, 54, 259–260, 264 | view settings |
| task bar, 41 | additional test views, 104 |
| tasks | configuring, 101 |
| debugging, 107 | W |
| loading program to, 242 normal, static, semistatic, 241 | work object coordinates |
| setting up, 241 | selecting, 136 |
| starting and stopping, 241 | work objects |
| tasks panel, 88, 107 | creating, 190 |
| three-position enabling device, 21, 38, 44 | declarations, 190 |
| using, 32 | defining coordinate system, 191 |
| toggle buttons, 39 | deleting, 197 |
| tool, overview control tools, 48 | displacements, 191 |
| tool center point | editing declarations, 196 |
| about, 175 | editing work objects data, 195 Quickset, 81 |
| calculation result, 181 | selecting, 81, 133 |
| define, 180 | world coordinates |
| defining, 181 | selecting, 136 |
| measuring, 183 | write access |
| TCP, 175 working area variations, 181 | granting, 97 |
| tool coordinates | message, 91 |
| default settings, 121 | rejecting, 97 |
| selecting, 136 | 7 |
| tool frame | Z |
| defining, 178 | zooming, 92 |

Contact us

ABB AB, Robotics Robotics and Motion S-721 68 VÄSTERÅS, Sweden Telephone +46 (0) 21 344 400

ABB AS, Robotics Robotics and Motion Nordlysvegen 7, N-4340 BRYNE, Norway Box 265, N-4349 BRYNE, Norway Telephone: +47 22 87 2000

ABB Engineering (Shanghai) Ltd. Robotics and Motion

No. 4528 Kangxin Highway PuDong District SHANGHAI 201319, China Telephone: +86 21 6105 6666

ABB Inc. Robotics and Motion 1250 Brown Road Auburn Hills, MI 48326 USA

Telephone: +1 248 391 9000

www.abb.com/robotics

